



Transaction DTD Merchant Integration Guide

Version: 1.6.5

Copyright © Moneris Solutions, 2023

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval systems, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Moneris Solutions Corporation.

## Table of Contents

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| <b>Getting Help</b>                                       | <b>6</b>  |
| <b>Changes in v1.6.5</b>                                  | <b>7</b>  |
| <b>1 About the Moneris Gateway Transaction DTD</b>        | <b>11</b> |
| 1.1 DTD and XML Syntax                                    | 11        |
| 1.2 Server to Server Endpoints                            | 11        |
| <b>2 Basic Transaction Set</b>                            | <b>12</b> |
| 2.1 Process Flow for Basic Transactions                   | 13        |
| 2.2 Basic Request DTD                                     | 13        |
| 2.3 Basic Response DTD                                    | 19        |
| 2.4 Purchase  | 21        |
| 2.5 Pre-Authorization                                     | 27        |
| 2.6 Incremental Pre-Authorization                         | 33        |
| 2.7 Re-Authorization                                      | 35        |
| 2.8 Pre-Authorization Completion                          | 39        |
| 2.9 Force Post  | 42        |
| 2.10 Refund   | 46        |
| 2.11 Independent Refund                                   | 50        |
| 2.12 Purchase Correction                                  | 54        |
| 2.13 Card Verification                                    | 57        |
| 2.14 Batch Close  | 61        |
| 2.15 Open Totals  | 62        |
| <b>3 Credential on File</b>                               | <b>64</b> |
| 3.1 About Credential on File                              | 64        |
| 3.2 Credential on File Info Object and Variables          | 64        |
| 3.3 Credential on File Transaction Types                  | 65        |
| 3.4 Initial Transactions in Credential on File            | 65        |
| 3.5 Credential on File and Converting Temporary Tokens    | 66        |
| 3.6 Card Verification and Credential on File Transactions | 66        |
| 3.6.1 When to Use Card Verification With COF              | 67        |
| 3.6.2 Credential on File and Vault Add Token              | 67        |
| 3.6.3 Credential on File and Vault Update Credit Card     | 67        |
| 3.6.4 Credential on File and Vault Add Credit Card        | 67        |
| 3.6.5 Credential on File and Recurring Billing            | 68        |
| 0.1 Definition of Request Fields – Credential on File     | 68        |
| <b>4 Vault Transaction Set</b>                            | <b>71</b> |
| 4.1 About the Vault Transaction Set                       | 71        |
| 4.2 Vault Request DTD                                     | 71        |
| 4.3 Vault Response DTD                                    | 73        |
| 4.4 Vault and Installments                                | 74        |
| 4.5 Vault Administrative Transactions                     | 74        |
| 4.5.1 Vault Add Credit Card – res_add_cc                  | 74        |
| 4.5.2 Vault Update Credit Card – res_update_cc            | 78        |
| 4.5.3 Vault Delete – res_delete                           | 82        |
| 4.5.4 Vault Lookup Full – res_lookup_full                 | 83        |
| 4.5.5 Vault Lookup Masked – res_lookup_masked             | 85        |
| 4.5.6 Vault Is Corporate Card – res_iscorporatecard       | 86        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| 4.5.7 Vault Get Expiring – res_get_expiring .....                   | 88         |
| 4.5.8 Vault Temporary Token Add – res_temp_add .....                | 90         |
| 4.5.9 Vault Add Token – res_add_token .....                         | 93         |
| 4.6 Vault Financial Transactions .....                              | 96         |
| 4.6.1 Customer ID Changes .....                                     | 96         |
| 4.6.2 Purchase with Vault – res_purchase_cc .....                   | 97         |
| 4.6.3 Pre-Authorization with Vault – res_preauth_cc .....           | 101        |
| 4.6.4 Independent Refund with Vault – res_ind_refund_cc .....       | 106        |
| 4.6.5 Force Post with Vault – res_forcepost_cc .....                | 109        |
| 4.6.6 Card Verification with Vault – res_card_verification_cc ..... | 112        |
| <b>5 3-D Secure 2.2 Transactions .....</b>                          | <b>116</b> |
| 5.1 About 3-D Secure 2.2 .....                                      | 116        |
| 5.1.1 3-D Secure Implementations .....                              | 117        |
| 5.1.2 Out of Scope/Not Supported Check .....                        | 118        |
| 5.1.3 Version Compatibility .....                                   | 118        |
| 5.1.4 Upgrading from 3-D Secure 2.0 to 3-D Secure 2.2 Check .....   | 118        |
| 5.2 Building Your 3-D Secure 2.2 Integration .....                  | 119        |
| 5.2.1 Activating 3-D Secure Functionality .....                     | 119        |
| 5.2.2 Transaction Flow for 3-D Secure - Browser channel .....       | 119        |
| 5.2.3 Transaction Flow for 3-D Secure - 3RI channel .....           | 121        |
| 5.2.3.1 Decoupled Authentication .....                              | 122        |
| 5.2.4 Mpi2Request Object and 3-D Secure Authentication .....        | 122        |
| 5.2.5 3-D Secure 2.2 Request DTD .....                              | 122        |
| 5.2.6 3-D Secure 2.2 Response DTD .....                             | 123        |
| 5.3 Implementing Card Lookup Request .....                          | 124        |
| 5.3.1 Card Lookup Request .....                                     | 124        |
| 5.4 Implementing MPI 3DS Authentication Request .....               | 127        |
| 5.4.1 MPI 3DS Authentication Request - Browser Channel .....        | 127        |
| 5.4.2 MPI 3DS Authentication Request - 3RI with recurring .....     | 136        |
| 5.4.3 MPI 3DS Authentication Request - 3RI, non-recurring .....     | 147        |
| 5.5 Handling the Challenge Flow .....                               | 155        |
| 5.5.1 Cavv Lookup Request .....                                     | 156        |
| 5.6 Handling the Decoupled Authentication Flow .....                | 157        |
| 5.7 Performing the Authorization .....                              | 158        |
| 5.7.1 Purchase with 3-D Secure – cavv_purchase .....                | 158        |
| 5.7.2 Pre-Authorization with 3-D Secure – cavv_preauth .....        | 164        |
| 5.8 Testing Your 3-D Secure 2.2 Integration .....                   | 170        |
| 5.9 Moving to Production With 3-D Secure 2.2 .....                  | 170        |
| 5.10 3-D Secure 2.2 TransStatus Codes .....                         | 171        |
| 5.11 3-D Secure 2.2 Commons TransStatusReason Decline Codes .....   | 171        |
| 5.12 CAVV Result Codes .....  | 173        |
| 5.12.1 Visa CAVV Result Codes .....                                 | 173        |
| 5.12.2 Mastercard CAVV Result Codes .....                           | 174        |
| 5.12.3 American Express CAVV Result Codes .....                     | 175        |
| <b>6 Installments by Visa .....</b>                                 | <b>177</b> |
| 6.1 About Installments by Visa .....                                | 177        |
| 6.2 Installments by Visa Transaction Types .....                    | 177        |
| 6.3 Sending Transactions with Installments by Visa .....            | 178        |
| 6.4 Installment Plan Lookup .....                                   | 178        |
| 6.5 Vault Installment Plan Lookup .....                             | 180        |
| 6.6 Installment Info Object .....                                   | 181        |

---

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| <b>7 Multi-Currency Pricing (MCP)</b>                | <b>182</b> |
| 7.1 About Multi-Currency Pricing (MCP)               | 182        |
| 7.2 Methods of Processing MCP Transactions           | 183        |
| 7.3 Multi-Currency Pricing (MCP) Request DTD         | 183        |
| 7.4 Multi-Currency Pricing (MCP) Response DTD        | 184        |
| 7.5 MCP Purchase                                     | 184        |
| 7.6 MCP Purchase with 3-D Secure                     | 189        |
| 7.7 MCP Purchase with 3-D Secure and Vault           | 196        |
| 7.8 MCP Pre-Authorization                            | 201        |
| 7.9 MCP Pre-Authorization with 3-D Secure            | 206        |
| 7.10 MCP Pre-Authorization with 3-D Secure and Vault | 212        |
| 7.11 MCP Pre-Authorization Completion                | 218        |
| 7.12 MCP Purchase Correction                         | 222        |
| 7.13 MCP Refund                                      | 225        |
| 7.14 MCP Independent Refund                          | 229        |
| 7.15 MCP Purchase With Vault                         | 233        |
| 7.16 MCP Pre-Authorization With Vault                | 237        |
| 7.17 MCP Independent Refund with Vault               | 241        |
| 7.18 MCP Get Rate                                    | 245        |
| 7.19 MCP Currency Codes                              | 247        |
| 7.20 MCP Error Codes                                 | 253        |
| <b>8 Apple Pay Token Transactions</b>                | <b>255</b> |
| 8.1 About Apple Pay Token Transactions               | 255        |
| 8.2 Apple Pay Token Request DTD                      | 255        |
| 8.3 Apple Pay Token Purchase                         | 256        |
| 8.4 Apple Pay Token Pre-Authorization                | 260        |
| <b>9 Google Pay Transactions</b>                     | <b>265</b> |
| 9.1 About Google Pay Transactions                    | 265        |
| 9.2 Google Pay Purchase                              | 265        |
| 9.3 Google Pay Pre-Authorization                     | 268        |
| <b>10 Recurring Billing</b>                          | <b>272</b> |
| 10.1 About Recurring Billing                         | 272        |
| 10.2 Purchase with Recurring Billing                 | 272        |
| 10.3 Recurring Billing Update                        | 279        |
| 10.4 Recurring Billing Response Fields and Codes     | 282        |
| 10.5 Credential on File and Recurring Billing        | 284        |
| <b>11 Customer Information</b>                       | <b>285</b> |
| 11.1 Customer Information Object                     | 285        |
| 11.2 Customer Info Object – Billing Information      | 286        |
| 11.3 Customer Info Object – Shipping Information     | 288        |
| 11.4 Customer Information Object – Items             | 289        |
| <b>12 e-Fraud Tools</b>                              | <b>291</b> |
| 12.1 Address Verification Service (AVS)              | 291        |
| 12.1.1 About Address Verification Service (AVS)      | 291        |
| 12.1.2 AVS Information Object                        | 292        |
| 12.1.3 AVS Response Codes                            | 293        |
| 12.2 Card Validation Digits (CVD)                    | 294        |
| 12.2.1 About Card Validation Digits (CVD)            | 295        |
| 12.2.2 Transactions Where CVD Is Required            | 295        |
| 12.2.3 CVD Information Object                        | 296        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| 12.2.4 CVD Result Codes .....                                 | 296        |
| <b>Appendix A Definition of Request Fields .....</b>          | <b>298</b> |
| A.1 Definition of Request Fields – Admin Transactions .....   | 303        |
| A.2 Definition of Request Fields – Vault .....                | 304        |
| A.3 Definition of Request Fields – 3-D Secure 2.2 .....       | 305        |
| A.4 Definition of Request Fields – PBB Info Object .....      | 310        |
| A.5 Definition of Request Fields – Pay By Bank .....          | 311        |
| A.6 Definition of Request Fields – Information Objects .....  | 312        |
| A.7 Definition of Request Fields – Credential on File .....   | 312        |
| A.8 Definition of Request Fields – Installments by Visa ..... | 314        |
| A.9 Definition of Request Fields – Apple Pay Token .....      | 315        |
| A.10 Definition of Request Fields – Recurring Billing .....   | 317        |
| A.11 Definition of Request Fields – AVS Info Object .....     | 318        |
| A.12 Definition of Request Fields – CVD Info Object .....     | 319        |
| <b>Appendix B Definitions of Response Fields .....</b>        | <b>320</b> |
| B.1 Definition of Response Fields –Installments by Visa ..... | 335        |

## Getting Help

Moneris has help for you at every stage of the integration process.

| Getting Started  | During Development  | Production  |
|--|---|---|
| Contact our Client<br>Integration Specialists:<br><br>clientintegrations@moneris.com | If you are already working<br>with an integration spe-<br>cialist and need technical<br>development assistance,<br>contact our eProducts<br>Technical Consultants:<br><br>1-866-319-7450<br><br>eproducts@moneris.com | If your application is already live<br>and you need production sup-<br>port, contact Moneris Customer<br>Service:<br><br>onlinepayments@moneris.com<br><br>1-866-319-7450<br><br>Available 24/7 |

For additional support resources, you can also make use of our community forums at

<http://community.moneris.com/product-forums/>

## Changes in v1.6.5

- Removed the request\_type field from MPI 3DS Authentication Request - 3RI with recurring
- Updated the note for the fields recurring\_frequency and recurring\_expiry
- Removed three\_ds\_completion\_ind in MPI 3DS Authentication Request - 3RI with recurring/no recurring
- Moved prior\_request\_auth\_info field to optional section for MPI 3DS Prior Authentication Info for MPI 3DS Authentication Request - 3RI with recurring
- Updated the note related to the Field email
- Added Merchant Advice Code field in the Appendix B - Definitions of Response Fields

### Changes in v1.6.4

- Updated the 3-D version to 2.2
- Added the 3RI flow chart to the section the section “Transaction Flow for 3-D Secure - 3RI channel”
- Updated the field Email moving from optional to required
- Added a note to the field Email
- Added the status “D” in the TransStatus Code
- Updated TransStatusReason Decline Codes
- Removed the Visa Checkout section. Visa Checkout has been decommissioned in June 1st 2023
- Updated the note related to the Field DS transaction ID

- Updated the note related to the Field 3DS Version
- Updated the note related to the Field 3DS server transaction ID
- Added a comment to Visa Secure
- Updated the note related to the Field ri\_indicator

### Changes in v1.6.3

- Added Pay By Bank chapter with topics covering the new feature, the Konek authentication flow, and how to build and test an integration
- Added Pay By Bank optional object to Purchase and Preauthorization basic transactions. This object contains new fields for linking a financial transaction to a Pay By Bank authentication, such as consent\_id, cryptogram, cryptogram\_expiry, payment\_method
- Added Pay By Bank transactions Get Access Token, Get Consent Data, and Get Payment Transaction Data
- Added the Pay By Bank response objects and their fields to the Definition of Response Fields in the Appendix. Each object has its own sub-topic to avoid confusion.
- Added the Pay By Bank request fields to the Definition of Request Fields in the Appendix.
- Added PBB to the list of possible values for wallet\_indicator

### Changes in v1.6.2

- Added note to ds\_trans\_id on only submitting it in financial transactions if using a 3rd party 3DS Secure service

### Changes in v1.6.1

- Added new 3DS fields to 3DS Authentication to support 3RI such as message\_category, device\_channel, ri\_indicator



- Added new 3DS fields to 3DS Authentication to support 3RI Decoupled Authentication such as `decoupled_request_indicator`, `decoupled_request_max_time`, `decoupled_request_async_url`
- Added new 3DS object `prior_request_auth_data` to 3DS Authentication to support 3RI, including its fields `prior_request_auth_info`, `prior_request_auth_method`, `prior_request_auth_ref`, `prior_request_auth_timestamp`
- Added additional fields to 3DS responses `threads_version` and `AuthenticationType`
- Added additional topics on 3DS Authentication for the 3RI scenarios with and without recurring features
- Retitled the existing 3DS Authentication scenario to specify it is intended for the browser channel only
- Added topic on 3RI channel authentication flow and retitled previous 3DS flow to specify it is intended for browser channel only
- Added topic on Handling 3RI Decoupled Authentication flow to explain the asynchronous response handling
- Added topic on Server To Server endpoints to cover the separate URL for 3DS Authentication

### Changes in v1.6.0

- Added new `foreign_indicator` field to Basic Transaction set: `purchase` and `preauth`
- Added new `foreign_indicator` field to 3-D Secure Transaction set: `cavvPurchase` and `cavvPreauth`
- Added new `foreign_indicator` field to the Basic Request DTD
- Added new `foreign_indicator` values in Appendix A Definition of Request Fields
- Updated AVS Response Codes table
- Added `InstallmentResults` to the Basic Response DTD and Vault Response DTD
- Added Installment Info Object to `Purchase`, `Pre-Authorization`, `resPurchaseCC` and `resPreauthCC` in the Basic Request DTD
- Added Installment Info Object to `resPurchaseCC` and `resPreauthCC` in the Vault Request DTD

- Added resInstallmentLookup to the Vault Request DTD
- Added Elements returned with resInstallmentLookup transactions to the Vault Response DTD
- Added new section and topics about Installments by Visa
- Added topic about Vault and Installments in the Vault section
- Added Installment Info Object to Purchase, Pre-Authorization, resPurchaseCC and resPreauthCC
- Added Installments by Visa transactions to the Basic Request DTD
- Added Installments by Visa fields to the Basic Response DTD

### Changes in v1.4.3

- Added Increment Preauthorization in Basic transactions
- Added request field is\_estimated in Basic, Vault, and 3-D Secure preauthorization transactions

### Changes in v1.4.3

- Added section for Google Pay™ transactions
- Added request field **DS transaction ID** in

### Changes in v1.4.2

- Corrected limits for the request field **start date**

### Changes in v1.4.1

- added topic DTD and XML Syntax
- added changes in version topic

# 1 About the Moneris Gateway Transaction DTD

The Moneris Gateway supports processing of credit card and debit card transactions in XML format over the HTTPS protocol.

This document contains detailed information on the request and response transaction requirements of the XML format. When creating custom APIs, these requirements must be met in order for transactions to be sent to Moneris Gateway in the proper format.

## 1.1 DTD and XML Syntax

The DTD in this document provides a structural map for constructing the XML code for transactions on the Moneris Gateway.

When coding the XML, self-closing XML tags (i.e., `<tag/>`) should not be used. Open/close tags should always be employed (i.e., `<tag></tag>`).

## 1.2 Server to Server Endpoints

XML transactions sent to the Moneris Gateway use two endpoints depending on whether you are utilizing our Moneris 3DS Authentication Server or

### Testing URLs:

Default endpoint:

<https://mpg1t.moneris.io>

MPI (3DS card lookup, authentication, and CAVV lookup:

<https://mpg1t.moneris.io/mpi2/servlet/MpiServlet>

### Production URLs:

Default endpoint:

<https://mpg1.moneris.io>

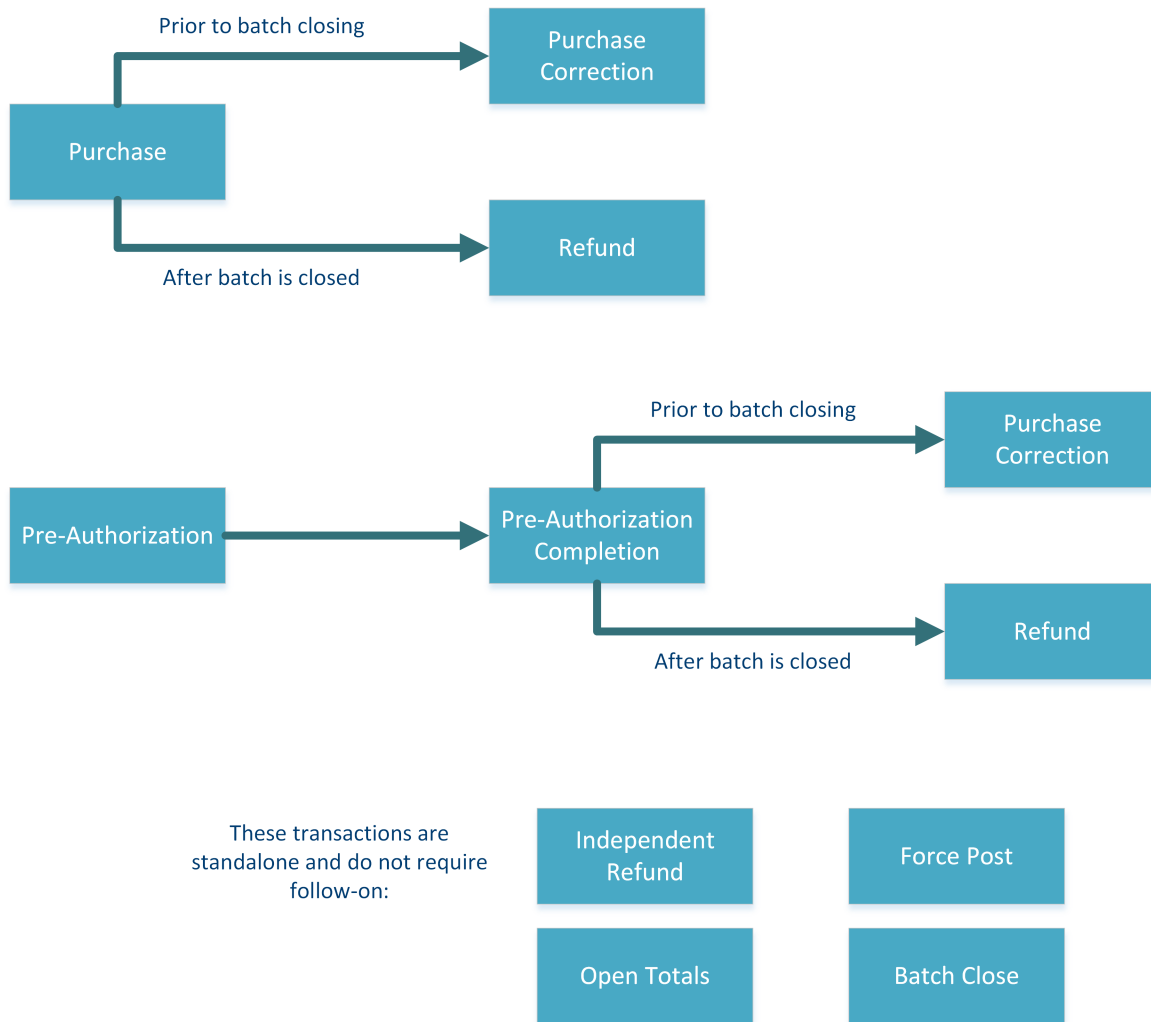
MPI (3DS card lookup, authentication, and CAVV lookup:

<https://mpg1.moneris.io/mpi2/servlet/MpiServlet>

## 2 Basic Transaction Set

- 2.1 Process Flow for Basic Transactions
- 2.2 Basic Request DTD
- 2.3 Basic Response DTD
- 2.4 Purchase
- 2.5 Pre-Authorization
- 2.7 Re-Authorization
- 2.8 Pre-Authorization Completion
- 2.9 Force Post
- 2.10 Refund
- 2.11 Independent Refund
- 2.12 Purchase Correction
- 2.13 Card Verification
- 2.14 Batch Close
- 2.15 Open Totals

## 2.1 Process Flow for Basic Transactions



## 2.2 Basic Request DTD

```
<!-- The Request DTD CA -->
<!-- Main Elements -->

<!ELEMENT request (store_id, api_token, status_check?, (purchase | refund | ind_refund |
preauth | completion | purchasecorrection |
forcepost | reauth | card_verification | idebit_purchase | idebit_refund | cavv_preauth |
cavv_purchase | mcp_completion | mcp_ind_refund | mcp_preauth | mcp_purchase | mcp_
purchasecorrection | mcp_refund | mcp_res_ind_refund_cc | mcp_res_preauth_cc | mcp_res_
purchase_cc | mcp_get_rate | mcp_cavv_preauth | mcp_cavv_purchase | mcp_cavv_res_preauth_cc |
mcp_cavv_res_purchase_cc | res_cavv_preauth_cc | res_cavv_purchase_cc | res_add_cc | res_
update_cc | res_delete | batchclose | opentotals | recur_update | applepay_token_purchase |
applepay_token_preauth | googlepay_purchase | googlepay_preauth | installmentLookup |
resinstallmentLookup))>

<!ELEMENT store_id (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT api_token (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT status_check (#PCDATA)>
```

```

<!--The following are the basic credit card transactions -->

<!ELEMENT purchase (order_id, cust_id?, amount, pan, expdate, crypt_type, dynamic_
descriptor?, cust_info?, avs_info?, cvd_info?, pbb_info?, recur?, cof_info?, installment_
info?, wallet_indicator?, foreign_indicator?)>
<!ELEMENT refund (order_id, amount, txn_number, crypt_type)>
<!ELEMENT ind_refund (order_id, cust_id?, amount, pan, expdate, crypt_type, dynamic_
descriptor?)>
<!ELEMENT preauth (order_id, cust_id?, amount, pan, expdate, crypt_type, dynamic_descriptor?,
cust_info?, avs_info?, cvd_info?, cof_info?, pbb_info?, installment_info?, wallet_indicator?,
foreign_indicator?)>
<!ELEMENT incremental_preauth (order_id, txn_number, amount)>
<!ELEMENT completion (order_id, comp_amount, txn_number, crypt_type, ship_indicator?)>
<!ELEMENT purchasecorrection (order_id, txn_number, crypt_type, ship_indicator?)>
<!ELEMENT forcepost (order_id, cust_id?, amount, pan, expdate, crypt_type, auth_code,
dynamic_descriptor?)>
<!ELEMENT card_verification (order_id, cust_id?, pan, expdate, crypt_type, avs_info?, cvd_
info?, cof_info?)>
<!ELEMENT reauth (order_id, cust_id?, orig_order_id, txn_number, amount, crypt_type)>
<!--The following are the Interac Online transactions -->
<!ELEMENT idebit_purchase (order_id, cust_id?, amount, idebit_track2) >
<!ELEMENT idebit_refund (order_id, amount, txn_number)>
<!--The following are for Verified by Visa and/or MasterCard SecureCode transactions -->
<!--NOTE: To assist in any chargeback investigations, it is recommended to store the 'XID'
(order_id) returned from the MPI for future reference. -->
<!--NOTE: In Frictionless flow, you may receive TransStatus as "Y", in which case you can
then proceed directly to Cavv Purchase/Preauth with values below -->

<!--NOTE: threads_version and threads_server_trans_id are mandatory for 3DS Version 2.2+ -->

<!ELEMENT cavv_preauth (order_id , cust_id?, amount, pan, expdate, cavv, crypt_type?,
dynamic_descriptor?, wallet_indicator?, cust_info?, avs_info?, cvd_info?, cof_info?, ds_
trans_id?, foreign_indicator?)>
<!ELEMENT cavv_purchase (order_id, cust_id?, amount, pan, expdate, cavv, crypt_type?,
dynamic_descriptor?, wallet_indicator?, cust_info?, avs_info?, cvd_info?, recur?, cof_info?,
ds_trans_id?, foreign_indicator?)>

<!--The following are the Multi-currency transactions (MCP) -->
<!ELEMENT mcp_completion (order_id, txn_number, crypt_type, cust_id, dynamic_descriptor?,
ship_indicator?, mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_currency_code, mcp_rate_token?) >
<!ELEMENT mcp_ind_refund (order_id, cust_id, pan, expdate, crypt_type, dynamic_descriptor?,
mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_currency_code, mcp_rate_token?)>
<!ELEMENT mcp_preauth (order_id, cust_id, pan, expdate, crypt_type, dynamic_descriptor?,
wallet_indicator?, market_indicator?, cm_id?, mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_
currency_code, mcp_rate_token?)>
<!ELEMENT mcp_purchase (order_id, cust_id, pan, expdate, crypt_type, dynamic_descriptor?,
wallet_indicator?, market_indicator?, cm_id?, mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_
currency_code, mcp_rate_token?)>
<!ELEMENT mcp_purchasecorrection (order_id, txn_number, crypt_type, cust_id)>
<!ELEMENT mcp_refund (order_id, amount, txn_number, crypt_type, cust_id, dynamic_descriptor?,
mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_currency_code, mcp_rate_token?)>
<!ELEMENT mcp_res_ind_refund_cc (data_key, order_id, cust_id, crypt_type, dynamic_descriptor?,
mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_currency_code, mcp_rate_token?)>
<!ELEMENT mcp_res_preauth_cc (data_key, order_id, cust_id, crypt_type, dynamic_descriptor?,
expdate?, mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_currency_code, mcp_rate_token?)>
<!ELEMENT mcp_res_purchase_cc (data_key, order_id, cust_id, crypt_type, dynamic_descriptor?,
expdate?, mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_currency_code, mcp_rate_token?)>
<!ELEMENT mcp_get_rate (mcp_version, rate_txn_type, rate_info)>
<!--NOTE: threads_version and threads_server_trans_id are mandatory for 3DS Version 2.0+ -->
<!ELEMENT mcp_cavv_preauth (order_id , cust_id?, amount, pan, expdate, cavv, crypt_type?,
dynamic_descriptor?, wallet_indicator?, threads_version, threads_server_trans_id, cust_info?,
avs_info?, cvd_info?, cof_info?, ds_trans_id?, mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_
currency_code, mcp_rate_token?)>

```

```
<!ELEMENT mcp_cavv_purchase (order_id, cust_id?, amount, pan, expdate, cavv, crypt_type?,
dynamic_descriptor?, wallet_indicator?, threads_version, threads_server_trans_id, cust_info?,
avs_info?, cvd_info?, recur?, cof_info?, ds_trans_id?, mcp_version, cardholder_amount,
cardholder_currency_code, mcp_rate_token?)>
<!ELEMENT mcp_cavv_res_preauth_cc (data_key, order_id, cust_id, crypt_type, dynamic_
descriptor?, expdate?, mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_currency_code, mcp_rate_
token?, threads_version, threads_server_trans_id, ds_trans_id?)>
<!ELEMENT mcp_cavv_res_purchase_cc (data_key, order_id, cust_id, crypt_type, dynamic_
descriptor?, expdate?, mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_currency_code, mcp_rate_
token?, threads_version, threads_server_trans_id, ds_trans_id?)>

<!--The following are the Vault transactions -->
<!--NOTE: threads_version and threads_server_trans_id are mandatory for 3DS Version 2.0+ -->
<!ELEMENT res_cavv_preauth_cc (data_key, order_id, cust_id, crypt_type, dynamic_descriptor?,
expdate?, threads_version, threads_server_trans_id, ds_trans_id?)>
<!ELEMENT res_cavv_purchase_cc (data_key, order_id, cust_id, crypt_type, dynamic_descriptor?,
expdate?, threads_version, threads_server_trans_id, ds_trans_id?)>
<!ELEMENT res_add_cc (pan, expdate, crypt_type, cust_id, phone, email, note, data_key_
format?)>
<!ELEMENT res_update_cc (data_key, cust_id, phone, email, note, pan, expdate, crypt_type)>
<!ELEMENT res_delete (data_key)>
<!ELEMENT res_lookup_full (data_key)>
<!ELEMENT res_lookup_masked (data_key)>
<!ELEMENT res_get_expiring EMPTY> <!-- nothing else is required, returns all CC cards that
expire within the current or next month -->
<!ELEMENT res_purchase_cc (data_key, order_id, cust_id?, amount, crypt_type, cust_info?, avs_
info?, cvd_info?, recur?, cof_info?, installment_info?)>
<!-- if a cust_id is sent, it will be submitted with the purchase but not stored in profile -
->
<!-- if a cust_id is not sent, then will pull cust_id from profile and submit with purchase -
->
<!-- if no cust_id is sent or in profile then none will be sent with purchase -->
<!-- above cust_id behaviour also applies to avs_info -->
<!ELEMENT res_preauth_cc (data_key, order_id, cust_id?, amount, crypt_type, cust_info?, avs_
info?, cvd_info?, cof_info?, installment_info?)>
<!ELEMENT res_ind_refund_cc (data_key, order_id, cust_id?, amount, crypt_type, cof_info?)>
<!ELEMENT res_iscorporatecard (data_key)>
<!ELEMENT res_card_verification_cc (data_key, order_id, crypt_type, avs_info?, cvd_info?,
cof_info?)>
<!ELEMENT res_forcepost_cc (data_key, order_id, cust_id?, amount, crypt_type, auth_code)>
<!ELEMENT res_temp_add (pan, expdate, crypt_type, duration, data_key_format?)>
<!ELEMENT res_add_token (data_key, crypt_type, expdate, cof_info, cust_id?, avs_info?,
email?, phone?, note?, data_key_format?)>
<!ELEMENT res_mpitxn (data_key, xid, amount, MD, merchantUrl, accept, userAgent, expdate?)>
<!--The following are general administrative transactions -->
<!ELEMENT batchclose (ecr_number)>
<!ELEMENT opentotals (ecr_number)>
<!ELEMENT recur_update (order_id, cust_id?, pan?, expdate?, recur_amount?, add_num_recur?,
total_num_recur?, hold?, terminate?,cof_info?)>
<!--The following are the Wallet Transactions (ApplePay and GooglePay) -->
<!ELEMENT applepay_token_purchase (order_id, cust_id?, amount, displayName, network, version,
data, signature, header, type, dynamic_descriptor?, token_originator?)>
<!ELEMENT applepay_token_preauth (order_id, cust_id?, amount, displayName, network, version,
data, signature, header, type, dynamic_descriptor?, token_originator?)>
<!ELEMENT googlepay_purchase (order_id, cust_id?, amount, network, payment_token, dynamic_
descriptor?)>
<!ELEMENT googlepay_preauth (order_id, cust_id?, amount, network, payment_token, dynamic_
descriptor?)>

<!--The following are the 3DS 2.2 transactions -->
<!ELEMENT Mpi2Request (store_id, api_token, (card_lookup | threads_authentication | cavv_
lookup))>

<!ELEMENT card_lookup (order_id, (data_key | pan), notification_url)>
```

```

//Browser Channel only
<!ELEMENT threads_authentication (message_category, device_channel, request_type, order_id,
(pan | data_key, expdate), amount, currency?, cardholder_name, threads_completion_ind, bill_
address1, bill_province, bill_city, bill_postal_code, bill_country, ship_address1, ship_
province, ship_city, ship_postal_code, ship_country, notification_url, challenge_window_size,
browser_useragent, browser_java_enabled, browser_screen_height, browser_screenwidth, browser_
language, email?, request_challenge?)>

//3RI, non-recurring
<!ELEMENT threads_authentication (message_category, device_channel, decoupled_request_
indicator?, decoupled_request_max_time?, decoupled_request_async_url?, ri_indicator, prior_
authentication_info?, order_id, (pan | data_key, expdate), amount, currency?, cardholder_
name), bill_address1, bill_province, bill_city, bill_postal_code, bill_country, ship_
address1, ship_province, ship_city, ship_postal_code, ship_country,>

//3RI, recurring
<!ELEMENT threads_authentication (message_category, device_channel, decoupled_request_
indicator?, decoupled_request_max_time?, decoupled_request_async_url?, recurring_frequency,
recurring_expiry, ri_indicator, prior_authentication_info, order_id, (pan | data_key,
expdate), amount, currency?, cardholder_name), bill_address1, bill_province, bill_city, bill_
postal_code, bill_country, ship_address1, ship_province, ship_city, ship_postal_code, ship_
country,>

<!ELEMENT prior_authentication_info (prior_request_auth_data, prior_request_ref, prior_
request_auth_method>)

<!ELEMENT cavv_lookup (cres)>

<!--The following are the Installments by Visa transactions -->

<!ELEMENT installmentLookup (store_id, api_token, order_id, amount, pan, expdate)
<!ELEMENT resInstallmentLookup (store_id, api_token, order_id, amount, data_key, expdate)

<!-- start standard -->
<!ELEMENT order_id (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT orig_order_id (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT cust_id (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT txn_number (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT crypt_type (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT auth_code (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT cavv (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT amount (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT comp_amount (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT pan (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT idebit_track2 (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT expdate (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ecr_number (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT dynamic_descriptor (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT add_num_rekurs (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT total_num_rekurs (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT hold (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT terminate (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ship_indicator (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT wallet_indicator (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT market_indicator (#PCDATA)>

<!-- start Cust Info -->
<!ELEMENT cust_info (billing, shipping, email, instructions, item+)>
<!ELEMENT billing (first_name, last_name, company_name, address, city, province, postal_code,
country, phone_number, fax, tax1, tax2, tax3, shipping_cost)>
<!ELEMENT shipping (first_name, last_name, company_name, address, city, province, postal_
code, country, phone_number, fax, tax1, tax2, tax3, shipping_cost)>
<!ELEMENT first_name (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT last_name (#PCDATA)>

```



```
<!ELEMENT company_name (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT address (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT city (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT province (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT postal_code (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT country (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT phone_number (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT fax (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT tax1 (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT tax2 (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT tax3 (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT shipping_cost (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT email (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT instructions (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT item (name, quantity, product_code, extended_amount)>
<!ELEMENT name (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT quantity (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT product_code (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT extended_amount (#PCDATA)>

<!-- start Installment Info -->
<!ELEMENT installment_info (plan_id, plan_id_ref, tac_version)>

<!-- start AVS -->
<!ELEMENT avs_info (avs_street_number, avs_street_name, avs_zipcode, avs_email?, avs_
hostname?, avs_browser?, avs_shiptocountry?, avs_shipmethod?, avs_merchprodsku?, avs_custip?,
avs_custphone?)>
<!ELEMENT avs_street_number (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT avs_street_name (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT avs_zipcode (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT avs_email (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT avs_hostname (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT avs_browser (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT avs_shiptocountry (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT avs_shipmethod (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT avs_merchprodsku (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT avs_custip (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT avs_custphone (#PCDATA)>

<!-- start CVD -->
<!ELEMENT cvd_info (cvd_indicator, cvd_value)>
<!ELEMENT cvd_indicator (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT cvd_value (#PCDATA)>

<!-- start Recur -->
<!ELEMENT recur (recur_unit, start_now, start_date, num_recur, period, recur_amount)>
<!ELEMENT recur_unit (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT start_now (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT start_date (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT num_recur (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT period (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT recur_amount (#PCDATA)>

<!-- start COF -->
<!ELEMENT cof_info (payment_indicator, payment_information, issuer_id)>
<!ELEMENT payment_indicator (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT payment_information (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT issuer_id (#PCDATA)>

<!-- start PBB -->

<!ELEMENT pbb_info (consent_id, payment_method, cryptogram?, cryptogram_expiry?)>
<!ELEMENT consent_id (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT payment_method (#PCDATA)>

<!-- start MCP specific fields-->
```

```

<!ELEMENT rate_info (rate+)>
<!ELEMENT rate ((cardholder_amount | merchant_settlement_amount), cardholder_currency_code)>
<!ELEMENT mcp_version (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT rate_txn_type (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT cardholder_amount (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT merchant_settlement_amount (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT cardholder_currency_code (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT mcp_rate_token (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT cm_id (#PCDATA)>

<!-- start Wallet specific fields -->
<!ELEMENT token_originator (store_id, api_token)>
<!ELEMENT payment_token (signature, protocol_version, signed_message)>
<!ELEMENT displayName (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT network (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT version (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT data (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT signature (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT header (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT type (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT protocol_version (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT signed_message (#PCDATA)>

<!-- start 3DS 2.2 specific fields -->
<!ELEMENT threeds_version (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT threeds_server_trans_id (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT data_key (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT notification_url (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT cardholder_name (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT currency (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT threeds_completion_ind (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT request_type (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT purchase_date (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT challenge_window_size (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT bill_address1 (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT bill_province (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT bill_city (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT bill_postal_code (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT bill_country (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ship_address1 (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ship_province (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ship_city (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ship_postal_code (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ship_country (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT browser_useragent (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT browser_java_enabled (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT browser_screen_height (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT browser_screen_width (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT browser_language (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT request_challenge (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT cres (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT message_category (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT device_channel (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT decoupled_request_indicator (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT decoupled_request_max_time (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT decoupled_request_async_url (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT recurring_frequency (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT recurring_expiry (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ri_indicator (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT prior_request_auth_data (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT prior_request_ref (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT prior_request_auth_method (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT prior_request_auth_timestamp (#PCDATA)>

<!-- start Vault specific fields -->

```

```
<!ELEMENT phone (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT note (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT data_key_format (#PCDATA)>
```

## 2.3 Basic Response DTD

```
<!-- The Response DTD CA-->
<!-- Main Elements -->
<!ELEMENT response (receipt+)>
<!ELEMENT mpi2Response (receipt)>
<!ELEMENT receipt ((ReceiptId, ReferenceNum, ResponseCode, ISO, AuthCode, TransTime,
TransDate, TransType, Complete,
Message, TransAmount, CardType, TransID, TimedOut, BankTotals, Ticket, RecurSuccess?,
CvdResultCode?, AvsResultCode?,
CavvResultCode?, ITDResponse?, StatusCode?, StatusMessage?, RecurUpdateSuccess?,
NextRecurDate?, RecurEndDate?, IsVisaDebit, IssuerId?,
MCPRateToken?, RateTxnType?, (Rate+)?, RateInqStartTime?, RateInqEndTime?,
RateValidityStartTime?, RateValidityEndTime?, RateValidityPeriod?,
CardholderCurrencyCode?, CardholderAmount?, MerchantSettlementCurrency?,
MerchantSettlementAmount?, MCPRate?, MCPErrorStatusCode?, MCPErrorMessage?, ResolveData?,
MpiType?, MpiSuccess?, MpiMessage?, MpiPaReq?, MpiTermUrl?, MpiMD?, MpiACSTurl?, MpiCavv?,
MpiPAResVerified?) |
(MessageType?, ResponseCode, Message, ReceiptId, ThreeDSMethodURL?, ThreeDSMethodData?,
ChallengeURL?, ChallengeData?, ChallengeCompletionIndicator?, TransStatus?,
ThreeDSServerTransId, ECI?, Cavv?))>
<!ELEMENT ReceiptId (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ReferenceNum (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ResponseCode (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ISO (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT AuthCode (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT TransTime (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT TransDate (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT TransType (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT Complete (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT Message (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT TransAmount (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT CardType (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT TransID (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT TimedOut (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT BankTotals (ECR)>
<!ELEMENT Ticket (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT CvdResultCode (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT AvsResultCode (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT RecurSuccess (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT IsVisaDebit (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT IssuerId (#PCDATA)>
<!-- The following is only applicable if for CAVV validation transactions -->
<!ELEMENT CavvResultCode (#PCDATA)>
<!-- The following is only applicable for Amex and JCB ITD Validation -->
<!ELEMENT ITDResponse (#PCDATA)>
<!-- The following are only applicable if status_check is set to true in the request -->
<!ELEMENT StatusCode (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT StatusMessage (#PCDATA)>
<!-- The following are only applicable to the recur update transaction -->
<!ELEMENT RecurUpdateSuccess (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT NextRecurDate (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT RecurEndDate (#PCDATA)>
<!-- The following are only applicable in a batch close or open totals transaction -->
<!ELEMENT ECR (term_id, closed, Card+)>
<!ELEMENT Card (CardType, (Purchase | Refund | Correction)+)>
<!ELEMENT term_id (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT closed (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT Purchase (Count, Amount)>
```

```

<!ELEMENT Refund (Count, Amount)>
<!ELEMENT Correction (Count, Amount)>
<!ELEMENT Count (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT Amount (#PCDATA)>
<!-- The following are only applicable to Multi-currency transactions (MCP) -->
<!ELEMENT Rate (CardholderCurrencyCode, CardholderAmount, MerchantSettlementCurrency,
MerchantSettlementAmount, MCPRate, MCPErrorStatusCode, MCPErrorMessage)>
<!ELEMENT MCPRateToken (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT RateTxnType (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT RateInqStartTime (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT RateInqEndTime (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT RateValidityStartTime (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT RateValidityEndTime (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT RateValidityPeriod (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT CardholderCurrencyCode (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT CardholderAmount (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT MerchantSettlementCurrency (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT MerchantSettlementAmount (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT MCPRate (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT MCPErrorStatusCode (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT MCPErrorMessage (#PCDATA)>
<!-- The following are only applicable to 3DS 2.2 transactions -->
<!ELEMENT MessageType (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ThreeDSMethodURL (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ThreeDSMethodData (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ChallengeURL (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ChallengeData (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ChallengeCompletionIndicator (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT TransStatus (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ThreeDSServerTransId (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ECI (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT Cavv (#PCDATA)>
<!-- The following are only applicable to Vault (res_) transactions -->
<!ELEMENT ResolveData (data_key?, payment_type?, cust_id, phone, email, note,
masked_pan?, pan?, expdate?, crypt_type?,
avs_street_number?, avs_street_name?, avs_zipcode?)>
<!ELEMENT data_key (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT payment_type (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT cust_id (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT phone (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT email (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT note (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT pan (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT masked_pan (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT expdate (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT crypt_type (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT avs_street_number (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT avs_street_name (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT avs_zipcode (#PCDATA)>
<!-- the following are only returned with res_mpitxn -->
<!ELEMENT MpiType (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT MpiSuccess (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT MpiMessage (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT MpiPaReq (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT MpiTermUrl (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT MpiMD (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT MpiACSTurl (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT MpiCavv (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT MpiPAResVerified (#PCDATA)>
<!-- the following are only returned with installmentLookup and resInstallmentLookup
transactions -->
<!ELEMENT EligibleInstallmentPlans (PlanCount, PlanDetails (PlanId, PlanIdRef, Name, Type,
NumInstallments, InstallmentFrequency, TotalFees, TotalPlanCost, APR, Tac (TacCount,
TacDetails (Text, Url, Version, LanguageCode)), PromotionInfo (PromotionCode, PromotionId),
FirstInstallment (UpfrontFee, Amount), LastInstallment (InstallmentFee, Amount))>

```

```
<!-- the following are only returned in the response for Visa Installments with Purchase,
Preauth, res_Purchase and res_Preauth transactions -->
<!ELEMENT InstallmentResults (PlanID, PlanRef, TacVersion, PlanAcceptanceID, PlanStatus,
PlanResponse)>
```

## 2.4 Purchase

Verifies funds on the customer's card, removes the funds and prepares them for deposit into the merchant's account.

### XML transaction object

```
<purchase>
```

### Purchase transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT purchase (order_id, cust_id?, amount, pan, expdate, crypt_type,
dynamic_descriptor?, cust_info?, avs_info?, cvd_info?, recur?, cof_info?,
installment_info?, wallet_indicator?, foreign_indicator?)>
```

### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits | Description  |
|--------------------------|-----------------|--|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | String<br>N/A   | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup  |
| API token<br><api_token> | String<br>N/A   | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

**Optional connection object field**

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits                  | Description   |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|---|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br><br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required </div> |

**Purchase transaction request fields – Required**

| Variable Name          | Type and Limits   | Description  |
|------------------------|---|--|
| order ID<br><order_id> | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alphanumeric-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces   | <p>Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.</p> <p>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction.</p> |
| amount<br><amount>     | <i>String</i><br><br>10-character decimal<br><br>Up to 7 digits (dollars) + decimal point (.) + 2 digits (cents) after the decimal point<br><br><div> <b>EXAMPLE:</b> 1234567.89 </div> | <p>Transaction dollar amount</p> <p>This must contain at least 3 digits, two of which are penny values</p> <p>Minimum allowable value = \$0.01, maximum allowable value = \$9999999.99</p>   |
| credit card number     | <i>String</i>   | Credit card number, usually 16 digits  |

| Variable Name                                 | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|---|--|--|
| <pan >  | max 20-character alphanumeric                                    | <p>—field can be maximum 20 digits in support of future expansion of card number ranges.</p> <p>Carries the token for network tokenization transactions.</p>   |
| expiry date<br><expdate>                      | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>4-character alphanumeric</p> <p>YYMM</p> | <p>Expiry date of the credit card, in YYMM format.</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This is the reverse of the MMY date format that is presented on the card.</p> </div>  |
| electronic commerce indicator<br><crypt_type> | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>1-character alphanumeric</p>             | <p>Describes the category of e-commerce transaction being processed. Allowable values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Single</li> <li>2 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Recurring</li> <li>3 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Instalment</li> <li>4 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Unknown classification</li> <li>5 – Authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</li> <li>6 – Non-authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</li> <li>7 – SSL-enabled merchant</li> </ul> <p><b>In Credential on File transactions where the request field e-commerce indicator is also being sent:</b> the allowable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for <b>payment indicator</b>, as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</li> <li>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</li> <li>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values</li> </ul> |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
|               |                 | <p>for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = U, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> |

### Purchase transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name                              | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|--|--|---|
| customer ID<br><cust_id>                   | <i>String</i><br>50-character alphanumeric<br><div> <b>NOTE:</b><br/>           Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>           &lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \         </div>  | Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier<br>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center  |
| dynamic descriptor<br><dynamic_descriptor> | <i>String</i><br>20-character alphanumeric<br>total of 22 characters including your merchant name and separator<br><div> <b>NOTE:</b><br/>           Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>           &lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \         </div> | Merchant-defined description sent on a per-transaction basis that will appear on the credit card statement appended to the merchant's business name<br>Dependent on the card issuer, the statement will typically show the dynamic descriptor appended to the merchant's existing business name separated by the "/" character; additional characters will be truncated<br><div> <b>NOTE:</b> The 22-character maximum limit must take the "/" into account as one of the characters         </div> |
| foreign indicator<br><foreign_indicator>   | <i>Boolean</i><br>true or false  | Used to identify domestic transactions processed by a marketplace merchant that is in a different country.  |
| wallet indicator<br><wallet_indicator>     | <i>String</i><br>3-character alphanumeric  | Indicates when a card number has  |



| Variable Name  | Type and Limits | Description   |
|--|-----------------|---|
|  |                 | <p>been collected via a digital wallet, such as in Apple Pay, Google Pay™, Visa Checkout and Mastercard MasterPass, or via network tokenization from the card brand.</p> <p>Required for Apple Pay, Google Pay™ transactions whereby you are using your own API to decrypt the payload</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <p>APP –Apple Pay In-App</p> <p>APW – Apple Pay on the Web</p> <p>GPP – Google Pay™ In-App</p> <p>GPW – Google Pay™ Web</p> <p>VCO –Visa Checkout</p> <p>MMP – Mastercard MasterPass</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Please note that if this field is included to indicate Apple Pay or Google Pay™, then Convenience Fee is not supported.</p> </div> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Network tokenization wallet indicators are not in the API call but are in the merchant resource centre (MRC).</p> </div> |
| Customer Information<br><cust_info> <div> <p>For information on request fields for this object, see "Customer Information Object" on page 285</p> </div> | Object<br>N/A   | Contains fields that describe miscellaneous customer information, billing and shipping information, and item information  |
| AVS Information  | Object          | Contains fields applying to the Address Verification Service (AVS) e-   |

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits          | Description   |
|---|--------------------------|---|
| <avs_info><br><br><div>For information on request fields for this object, see "Definition of Request Fields – AVS Info Object" on page 318</div>                                      | N/A                      | fraud tool  |
| CVD Information<br><cvd_info><br><br><div>For information on request fields for this object, see "Definition of Request Fields – CVD Info Object" on page 319</div>                   | <i>Object</i><br><br>N/A | Contains fields related to the Card Validation Digits e-fraud tool                                  |
| Recurring Billing<br><recur><br><br><div>For information on request fields for this object, see "Definition of Request Fields – Recurring Billing" on page 317</div>                  | <i>Object</i><br><br>N/A | Contains fields related to Recurring Billing  |
| Credential on File Information<br><cof_info><br><br><div>For information on request fields for this object, see "Definition of Request Fields – Credential on File" on page 312</div> | <i>Object</i><br><br>N/A | Required when storing cardholder credentials or using these credentials in subsequent transactions. |
| Installment Info<br><br>For fields in this object, see 6.6 Installment Info Object  | <i>Object</i><br><br>N/A | Contains request fields related to installments   |

## 2.5 Pre-Authorization

Verifies and locks funds on the customer's credit card. The funds are locked for a specified amount of time based on the card issuer.

To retrieve the funds that have been locked by a Pre-Authorization transaction so that they may be settled in the merchant's account, a Pre-Authorization Completion transaction must be performed. A Pre-Authorization transaction may only be "completed" once.

### XML transaction object

```
<preauth>
```

### Pre-Authorization transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT preauth (order_id, cust_id?, amount, pan, expdate, crypt_type,
dynamic_descriptor?, cust_info?, avs_info?, cvd_info?, cof_info?, installment_
info?, wallet indicator?, foreign_indicator?)>
```

### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits | Description  |
|--------------------------|-----------------|--|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | String<br>N/A   | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup  |
| API token<br><api_token> | String<br>N/A   | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

### Optional connection object field

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits       | Description   |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------|---|
| status check<br><status_check> | Boolean<br>true/false | Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
|               |                 | <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required</p> </div> |

### Pre-Authorization transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name                                | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|--|--|--|
| <p>order ID</p> <p>&lt;order_id&gt;</p>      | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>50-character alphanumeric-A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces</p>   | <p>Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.</p> <p>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction.</p> |
| <p>amount</p> <p>&lt;amount&gt;</p>          | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>10-character decimal</p> <p>Up to 7 digits (dollars) + decimal point (.) + 2 digits (cents) after the decimal point</p> <div> <p><b>EXAMPLE:</b> 1234567.89</p> </div> | <p>Transaction dollar amount</p> <p>This must contain at least 3 digits, two of which are penny values</p> <p>Minimum allowable value = \$0.01, maximum allowable value = \$9999999.99</p>   |
| <p>credit card number</p> <p>&lt;pan&gt;</p> | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>max 20-character alphanumeric</p>  | <p>Credit card number, usually 16 digits —field can be maximum 20 digits in support of future expansion of card number ranges.</p>   |

| Variable Name                                 | Type and Limits                            | Description   |
|---|--|---|
|   |  | Carries the token for network tokenization transactions.  |
| expiry date<br><expdate>                      | String<br>4-character alphanumeric<br>YYMM | <p>Expiry date of the credit card, in YYMM format.</p> <div> <b>NOTE:</b> This is the reverse of the MMYM date format that is presented on the card. </div>   |
| electronic commerce indicator<br><crypt_type> | String<br>1-character alphanumeric         | <p>Describes the category of e-commerce transaction being processed. Allowable values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Single</li> <li>2 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Recurring</li> <li>3 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Instalment</li> <li>4 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Unknown classification</li> <li>5 – Authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</li> <li>6 – Non-authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</li> <li>7 – SSL-enabled merchant</li> </ul> <p><b>In Credential on File transactions where the request field e-commerce indicator is also being sent:</b> the allowable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for <b>payment indicator</b>, as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</li> <li>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</li> <li>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</li> <li>if payment indicator = U, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7</li> </ul> |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description  |
|---------------|-----------------|--|
|               |                 | if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7 |

### Pre-Authorization transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name                              | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|--|--|---|
| customer ID<br><cust_id>                   | <i>String</i><br>50-character alphanumeric<br><div> <b>NOTE:</b><br/>           Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>           &lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \         </div>  | Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier<br><br>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center  |
| dynamic descriptor<br><dynamic_descriptor> | <i>String</i><br>20-character alphanumeric<br>total of 22 characters including your merchant name and separator<br><div> <b>NOTE:</b><br/>           Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>           &lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \         </div> | Merchant-defined description sent on a per-transaction basis that will appear on the credit card statement appended to the merchant's business name<br><br>Dependent on the card issuer, the statement will typically show the dynamic descriptor appended to the merchant's existing business name separated by the "/" character; additional characters will be truncated<br><br><div> <b>NOTE:</b> The 22-character maximum limit must take the "/" into account as one of the characters         </div> |
| foreign indicator<br><foreign_indicator>   | <i>Boolean</i><br>true or false  | Used to identify domestic transactions processed by a marketplace merchant that is in a different country.  |
| wallet indicator<br><wallet_indicator>     | <i>String</i><br>3-character alphanumeric  | Indicates when a card number has been collected via a digital wallet, such as in Apple Pay, Google Pay™, Visa Checkout and Mastercard MasterPass, or via net-   |

| Variable Name                | Type and Limits       | Description  |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|--|
|                              |                       | <p>work tokenization from the card brand.</p> <p>Required for Apple Pay, Google Pay™ transactions whereby you are using your own API to decrypt the payload</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <p>APP – Apple Pay In-App</p> <p>APW – Apple Pay on the Web</p> <p>GPP – Google Pay™ In-App</p> <p>GPW – Google Pay™ Web</p> <p>VCO – Visa Checkout</p> <p>MMP – Mastercard MasterPass</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Please note that if this field is included to indicate Apple Pay or Google Pay™, then Convenience Fee is not supported.</p> </div> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Network tokenization wallet indicators are not in the API call but are in the merchant resource centre (MRC).</p> </div> |
| is_estimated<br>is_estimated | Boolean<br>true/false | <p>Indicates if this preauthorization is using an estimated amount. Estimations allow for incrementing the amount held via subsequent incrementalAuth requests. Defaults to false.</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Please note that if this field is true, the preauthorization is only eligible for a single Preauthorization Completion. Any completion sent for partial completion is treated as a full completion (ship_indicator= P is treated as = F when is_estimated= true on the original preauth)</p> </div>   |

| Variable Name  | Type and Limits      | Description  |
|--|----------------------|--|
| Customer Information<br><cust_info><br><div>For information on request fields for this object, see xrefHere</div>          | <i>Object</i><br>N/A | Contains fields that describe miscellaneous customer information, billing and shipping information, and item information |
| AVS Information<br><avs_info><br><div>For information on request fields for this object, see xrefHere</div>                | <i>Object</i><br>N/A | Contains fields applying to the Address Verification Service (AVS) e-fraud tool  |
| CVD Information<br><cvd_info><br><div>For information on request fields for this object, see xrefHere</div>                | <i>Object</i><br>N/A | Contains fields related to the Card Validation Digits e-fraud tool   |
| Recurring Billing<br><recur><br><div>For information on request fields for this object, see xrefHere</div>                 | <i>Object</i><br>N/A | Contains fields related to Recurring Billing   |
| Credential on File Information<br><cof_info><br><div>For information on request fields for this object, see xrefHere</div> | <i>Object</i><br>N/A | Required when storing cardholder credentials or using these credentials in subsequent transactions.                      |
| Installment Info<br>For fields in this object, see 6.6 Installment Info Object   | <i>Object</i><br>N/A | Contains request fields related to installments  |



| Variable Name  | Type and Limits | Description  |
|--|-----------------|--|
| Pay By Bank Info   | <i>Object</i>   | Required when performing a financial transaction after obtaining an Interac Konek (Pay By Bank) authentication. Links the PBB consent to this transaction. |
| <PBB_info>   | N/A             |  |
| <div>For information on request fields for this object, see "Definition of Request Fields – PBB Info Object" on page 310</div> |                 | <div><b>NOTE:</b> Internal only. This object maps to FID 7P 'Pay By Bank Elements' within Host Messaging.</div>  |

## 2.6 Incremental Pre-Authorization

Increases the locked amount of funds in an existing pre-authorization for later settle by a single pre-authorization completion. There is no limit to the number of incremental pre-authorization transactions on the original estimated auth and each new incremental pre-authorization increases the hold on the customer's credit card.

Incremental Pre-authorizations require an estimated amount in the initial Pre-Authorization. This is set using the <is\_estimated> field set to true.

For Mastercard only, an Incremental Pre-Authorization can be submitted with a \$0 value for the amount to request extending the allowable timeframe for completion (e.g, 30 days).

For additional details on using estimated amounts in Pre-Authorizations and using Incremental Pre-Authorizations to increase the locked amount of funds, see 1 Incremental Authorization Rules

### XML transaction object

<incremental\_preauth>

### Increment Pre-Authorization transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT incremental_preauth (order_id, txn_number, amount)>
```

### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
| store ID      | <i>String</i>   | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup               |
| <store_id>    | N/A             |   |
| API token     | <i>String</i>   | Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation |
| <api_token>   | N/A             |   |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
|               |                 | <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

### Optional connection object field

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits                  | Description   |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|---|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br><br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required </div> |

### Increment Pre-Authorization transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name          | Type and Limits   | Description  |
|------------------------|---|--|
| order ID<br><order_id> | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alphanumeric-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces | <p>Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.</p> <p>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction.</p> |

| Variable Name                      | Type and Limits   | Description   |
|------------------------------------|---|---|
| transaction number<br><txn_number> | String<br><br>255-character, alpha-numeric, hyphens or under-scores<br><br>variable length  | Used to reference the original transaction when performing a follow-on transaction (i.e., Pre-Authorization Completion, Purchase Correction or Refund)<br><br>This value is returned in the response of the original transaction<br><br>Pre-Authorization Completion: references a Pre-Authorization<br><br>Refund/Purchase Correction: references a Purchase or Pre-Authorization Completion |
| amount<br><amount>                 | String<br><br>10-character decimal<br><br>Up to 7 digits (dollars) + decimal point (.) + 2 digits (cents) after the decimal point<br><br><div>EXAMPLE: 1234567.89</div> | Transaction dollar amount to increase the preauthorization by.<br><br>This must contain at least 3 digits, two of which are penny values<br><br>Minimum allowable value = \$0.01, maximum allowable value = \$9999999.99  |

## 2.7 Re-Authorization

If a Pre-Authorization transaction has already taken place, and not all the locked funds were released by a Completion transaction, a Re-Authorization allows you to lock the remaining funds so that they can be released by another Completion transaction in the future.

Re-Authorization is necessary because funds that have been locked by a Pre-Authorization transaction can only be released by a Completion transaction one time. If the Completion amount is less than the Pre-Authorization amount, the remaining money cannot be "completed".

### XML transaction object

<reauth>

#### TransactionTopicName transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT reauth (order_id, cust_id?, orig_order_id, txn_number, amount, crypt_type)>
```

**Core connection object fields (all API transactions)**

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits      | Description  |
|--------------------------|----------------------|--|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | <i>String</i><br>N/A | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup  |
| API token<br><api_token> | <i>String</i><br>N/A | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

**Optional connection object field**

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits              | Description  |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required</p> </div> |

**TransactionTopicName transaction request fields – Required**

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description                        |
|---------------|-----------------|------------------------------------|
| order ID      | <i>String</i>   | Merchant-defined transaction iden- |

| Variable Name                        | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|--------------------------------------|--|---|
| <xmlvariableHere>                    | 50-character alphanumeric-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces   | tifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.<br><br>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction.  |
| original order ID<br><orig_order_id> | <i>String</i><br>50-character alphanumeric<br>a-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces   | Order ID from the original Pre-Authorization transaction, used as a reference to retrieve the original payment details  |
| transaction number<br><txn_number>   | <i>String</i><br>255-character, alphanumeric, hyphens or underscores<br><br>variable length  | Used to reference the original transaction when performing a follow-on transaction (i.e., Pre-Authorization Completion, Purchase Correction or Refund)<br><br>This value is returned in the response of the original transaction<br><br>Pre-Authorization Completion: references a Pre-Authorization<br><br>Refund/Purchase Correction: references a Purchase or Pre-Authorization Completion |
| amount<br><amount>                   | <i>String</i><br>10-character decimal<br><br>Up to 7 digits (dollars) + decimal point (.) + 2 digits (cents) after the decimal point<br><br><b>EXAMPLE: 1234567.89</b> | Transaction dollar amount<br><br>This must contain at least 3 digits, two of which are penny values<br><br>Minimum allowable value = \$0.01, maximum allowable value = \$9999999.99   |
| electronic commerce indic-           | <i>String</i>  | Describes the category of e-com-  |

| Variable Name                         | Type and Limits          | Description   |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------|---|
| <p>ator</p> <p>&lt;crypt_type&gt;</p> | 1-character alphanumeric | <p>merce transaction being processed. Allowable values are:</p> <p>1 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Single</p> <p>2 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Recurring</p> <p>3 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Installment</p> <p>4 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Unknown classification</p> <p>5 – Authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</p> <p>6 – Non-authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</p> <p>7 – SSL-enabled merchant</p> <p><b>In Credential on File transactions where the request field e-commerce indicator is also being sent:</b> the allowable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for <b>payment indicator</b>, as follows:</p> <p>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = U, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> |

**TransactionTopicName transaction request fields – Optional**

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description  |
|---------------|-----------------|--|
| customer ID   | <i>String</i>   | Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|---------------|--|--|
| <cust_id>     | 50-character alphanumeric<br><br><div> <b>NOTE:</b><br/>           Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>           &lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \         </div> | Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center |

## 2.8 Pre-Authorization Completion

Retrieves funds that have been locked (by a Pre-Authorization transaction), and prepares them for settlement into the merchant's account.

### XML transaction object

<completion>

### Pre-Authorization Completion transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT completion (order_id, comp_amount, txn_number, crypt_type, ship_indicator?)>
```

### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits | Description   |
|--------------------------|-----------------|---|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | String<br>N/A   | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup   |
| API token<br><api_token> | String<br>N/A   | Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation<br><br>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:<br><br>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a><br><br>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a> |

**Optional connection object field**

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits                  | Description  |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|--|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br><br>true/false | Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully<br><br>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required |

**Pre-Authorization Completion transaction request fields – Required**

| Variable Name                      | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|------------------------------------|--|---|
| order ID<br><order_id>             | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alphanumeric-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces  | Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.<br><br>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction. |
| completion amount<br><comp_amount> | <i>String</i><br><br>10-character decimal<br><br>Up to 7 digits (dollars) + decimal point (.) + 2 digits (cents) after the decimal point<br><br><b>EXAMPLE:</b> 1234567.89 | Dollar amount of a Pre-Authorization Completion transaction, which may differ from the original amount authorized in the Pre-Authorization  |
| transaction number                 | <i>String</i>  | Used to reference the original trans-   |



| Variable Name  | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|--|--|--|
| <txn_number>   | 255-character, alpha-numeric, hyphens or under-scores<br><br>variable length | <p>action when performing a follow-on transaction (i.e., Pre-Authorization Completion, Purchase Correction or Refund)</p> <p>This value is returned in the response of the original transaction</p> <p>Pre-Authorization Completion: references a Pre-Authorization</p> <p>Refund/Purchase Correction: references a Purchase or Pre-Authorization Completion</p>   |
| <p>electronic commerce indicator</p> <p>&lt;crypt_type&gt;</p> | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>1-character alphanumeric</p>                         | <p>Describes the category of e-commerce transaction being processed. Allowable values are:</p> <p>1 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Single</p> <p>2 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Recurring</p> <p>3 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Instalment</p> <p>4 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Unknown classification</p> <p>5 – Authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</p> <p>6 – Non-authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</p> <p>7 – SSL-enabled merchant</p> <p><b>In Credential on File transactions where the request field e-commerce indicator is also being sent:</b> the allowable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for <b>payment indicator</b>, as follows:</p> <p>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values</p> |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description  |
|---------------|-----------------|--|
|               |                 | for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7   |
|               |                 | if payment indicator = U, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7       |
|               |                 | if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7 |

### Pre-Authorization Completion transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name                          | Type and Limits                           | Description  |
|--|---|--|
| shipping indicator<br><ship_indicator> | <i>String</i><br>1-character alphanumeric | Used to identify completion transactions that require multiple shipments, also referred to as multiple completions<br><br>By default, if shipping indicator is not sent, the Pre-Authorization Completion is listed as final<br><br>To indicate that the Pre-Authorization Completion is to be left open by the issuer as supplemental shipments or completions are pending, submit shipping indicator with a value of P<br><br>Possible values:<br><br>P – Partial<br><br>F – Final |

## 2.9 Force Post

Retrieves the locked funds and prepares them for settlement into the merchant's account.

Used when a merchant obtains the authorization number directly from the issuer by a third-party authorization method (such as by phone).

### XML transaction object

<forcepost>

**Force Post transaction object definition**

```
<!ELEMENT forcepost (order_id, cust_id?, amount, pan, expdate, crypt_type, auth_code, dynamic_descriptor?)>
```

**Core connection object fields (all API transactions)**

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits | Description  |
|--------------------------|-----------------|--|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | String<br>N/A   | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup  |
| API token<br><api_token> | String<br>N/A   | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

**Optional connection object field**

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits       | Description  |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------|--|
| status check<br><status_check> | Boolean<br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required</p> </div> |

## Force Post transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name                                 | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|---|--|---|
| order ID<br><order_id>                        | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alphanumeric-A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces  | Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.<br><br>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction. |
| amount<br><amount>                            | <i>String</i><br><br>10-character decimal<br><br>Up to 7 digits (dollars) + decimal point (.) + 2 digits (cents) after the decimal point<br><br><b>EXAMPLE:</b> 1234567.89 | Transaction dollar amount<br><br>This must contain at least 3 digits, two of which are penny values<br><br>Minimum allowable value = \$0.01, maximum allowable value = \$9999999.99   |
| credit card number<br><pan>                   | <i>String</i><br><br>max 20-character alphanumeric   | Credit card number, usually 16 digits —field can be maximum 20 digits in support of future expansion of card number ranges.<br><br>Carries the token for network tokenization transactions.   |
| expiry date<br><expdate>                      | <i>String</i><br><br>4-character alphanumeric<br><br>YYMM  | Expiry date of the credit card, in YYMM format.<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> This is the reverse of the MMY date format that is presented on the card.   |
| electronic commerce indicator<br><crypt_type> | <i>String</i><br><br>1-character alphanumeric  | Describes the category of e-commerce transaction being processed. Allowable values are:   |

| Variable Name                     | Type and Limits                    | Description  |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|--|
|                                   |                                    | <p>1 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Single</p> <p>2 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Recurring</p> <p>3 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Instalment</p> <p>4 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Unknown classification</p> <p>5 – Authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</p> <p>6 – Non-authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</p> <p>7 – SSL-enabled merchant</p> <p><b>In Credential on File transactions where the request field e-commerce indicator is also being sent:</b> the allowable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for <b>payment indicator</b>, as follows:</p> <p>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = U, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> |
| authorization code<br><auth_code> | String<br>8-character alphanumeric | An authorization code required to carry out a Force Post; provided in the transaction response from the issuing bank   |

**Force Post transaction request fields – Optional**

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description  |
|---------------|-----------------|--|
| customer ID   | String          | Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier |

| Variable Name                              | Type and Limits   | Description  |
|--|---|--|
| <cust_id>                                  | 50-character alphanumeric<br><br><b>NOTE:</b><br>Some special characters are not allowed:<br>< > \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \   | Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center   |
| dynamic descriptor<br><dynamic_descriptor> | <i>String</i><br><br>20-character alphanumeric<br><br>total of 22 characters including your merchant name and separator<br><br><b>NOTE:</b><br>Some special characters are not allowed:<br>< > \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \ | Merchant-defined description sent on a per-transaction basis that will appear on the credit card statement appended to the merchant's business name<br><br>Dependent on the card issuer, the statement will typically show the dynamic descriptor appended to the merchant's existing business name separated by the "/" character; additional characters will be truncated<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> The 22-character maximum limit must take the "/" into account as one of the characters |

## 2.10 Refund

Restores all or part of the funds from a Purchase, Pre-Authorization Completion or Force Post transaction to the cardholder's card.

Unlike a Purchase Correction, there is a record of both the initial charge and the refund on the cardholder's statement.

For processing refunds on a different card than the one used in the original transaction, the Independent Refund transaction should be used instead.

### XML transaction object

```
<refund>
```

### Refund transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT refund (order_id, amount, txn_number, crypt_type, cust_id?, dynamic_descriptor?)>
```

**Core connection object fields (all API transactions)**

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits      | Description  |
|--------------------------|----------------------|--|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | <i>String</i><br>N/A | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup  |
| API token<br><api_token> | <i>String</i><br>N/A | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

**Optional connection object field**

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits              | Description  |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required</p> </div> |

**Refund transaction request fields – Required**

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
| order ID      | <i>String</i>   | Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every |

| Variable Name                                     | Type and Limits   | Description   |
|---|---|---|
| <order_id>  | 50-character alpha-numeric-A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces   | Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.<br><br>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction.   |
| amount  | <i>String</i>   | Transaction dollar amount   |
| <amount>  | 10-character decimal<br><br>Up to 7 digits (dollars) + decimal point (.) + 2 digits (cents) after the decimal point<br><br><b>EXAMPLE:</b> 1234567.89 | This must contain at least 3 digits, two of which are penny values<br><br>Minimum allowable value = \$0.01, maximum allowable value = \$9999999.99  |
| transaction number<br><br><txn_number>            | <i>String</i><br><br>255-character, alpha-numeric, hyphens or underscores<br><br>variable length  | Used to reference the original transaction when performing a follow-on transaction (i.e., Pre-Authorization Completion, Purchase Correction or Refund)<br><br>This value is returned in the response of the original transaction<br><br>Pre-Authorization Completion: references a Pre-Authorization<br><br>Refund/Purchase Correction: references a Purchase or Pre-Authorization Completion |
| electronic commerce indicator<br><br><crypt_type> | <i>String</i><br><br>1-character alphanumeric   | Describes the category of e-commerce transaction being processed. Allowable values are:<br><br>1 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Single<br><br>2 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Recurring<br><br>3 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Instalment   |



| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description  |
|---------------|-----------------|--|
|               |                 | <p>4 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Unknown classification</p> <p>5 – Authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</p> <p>6 – Non-authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</p> <p>7 – SSL-enabled merchant</p> <p><b>In Credential on File transactions where the request field e-commerce indicator is also being sent:</b> the allowable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for <b>payment indicator</b>, as follows:</p> <p>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = U, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> |

### Refund transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name                              | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|--|--|---|
| customer ID<br><cust_id>                   | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>50-character alphanumeric</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b><br/>Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>&lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \</p> </div> | <p>Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier</p> <p>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center</p> |
| dynamic descriptor<br><dynamic_descriptor> | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>20-character alphanumeric</p>  | Merchant-defined description sent on a per-transaction basis that will appear on the credit card statement                  |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|---------------|--|--|
|               | total of 22 characters including your merchant name and separator                    | appended to the merchant's business name   |
|               | <b>NOTE:</b><br>Some special characters are not allowed:<br>< > \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \ | Dependent on the card issuer, the statement will typically show the dynamic descriptor appended to the merchant's existing business name separated by the "/" character; additional characters will be truncated |
|               |  | <b>NOTE:</b> The 22-character maximum limit must take the "/" into account as one of the characters  |

## 2.11 Independent Refund

Credits a specified amount to the cardholder's credit card. The credit card number and expiry date are mandatory.

It is not necessary for the transaction that you are refunding to have been processed via the Moneris Gateway.

### XML transaction object

```
<ind_refund>
```

### Independent Refund transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT ind_refund (order_id, cust_id?, amount, pan, expdate, crypt_type, dynamic_descriptor?)>
```

### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits | Description  |
|--------------------------|-----------------|--|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | String<br>N/A   | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup  |
| API token<br><api_token> | String<br>N/A   | Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation<br><br>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin set- |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
|               |                 | <p>tings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

### Optional connection object field

| Variable Name                                   | Type and Limits                         | Description  |
|---|---|--|
| <p>status check</p> <p>&lt;status_check&gt;</p> | <p><i>Boolean</i></p> <p>true/false</p> | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required</p> </div> |

### Independent Refund transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name                           | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|---|--|--|
| <p>order ID</p> <p>&lt;order_id&gt;</p> | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>50-character alphanumeric-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces</p> | <p>Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.</p> <p>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction.</p> |
| amount                                  | <i>String</i>  | Transaction dollar amount  |

| Variable Name  | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|--|--|--|
| <amount>   | <p>10-character decimal</p> <p>Up to 7 digits (dollars) + decimal point (.) + 2 digits (cents) after the decimal point</p> <p><b>EXAMPLE:</b> 1234567.89</p> | <p>This must contain at least 3 digits, two of which are penny values</p> <p>Minimum allowable value = \$0.01, maximum allowable value = \$9999999.99</p>  |
| <p>credit card number</p> <p>&lt;pan&gt;</p>                   | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>max 20-character alphanumeric</p>  | <p>Credit card number, usually 16 digits —field can be maximum 20 digits in support of future expansion of card number ranges.</p> <p>Carries the token for network tokenization transactions.</p>   |
| <p>expiry date</p> <p>&lt;expdate&gt;</p>                      | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>4-character alphanumeric</p> <p>YYMM</p>   | <p>Expiry date of the credit card, in YYMM format.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This is the reverse of the MMY date format that is presented on the card.</p>   |
| <p>electronic commerce indicator</p> <p>&lt;crypt_type&gt;</p> | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>1-character alphanumeric</p>   | <p>Describes the category of e-commerce transaction being processed. Allowable values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Single</li> <li>2 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Recurring</li> <li>3 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Instalment</li> <li>4 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Unknown classification</li> <li>5 – Authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</li> <li>6 – Non-authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</li> <li>7 – SSL-enabled merchant</li> </ul> <p><b>In Credential on File transactions where the request field e-commerce</b></p> |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
|               |                 | <p><b>indicator is also being sent:</b> the allowable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for <b>payment indicator</b>, as follows:</p> <p>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = U, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> |

### Independent Refund transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name                              | Type and Limits   | Description  |
|--|---|--|
| customer ID<br><cust_id>                   | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>50-character alphanumeric</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b><br/>Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>&lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \</p> </div>  | <p>Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier</p> <p>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center</p>  |
| dynamic descriptor<br><dynamic_descriptor> | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>20-character alphanumeric</p> <p>total of 22 characters including your merchant name and separator</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b><br/>Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>&lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \</p> </div> | <p>Merchant-defined description sent on a per-transaction basis that will appear on the credit card statement appended to the merchant's business name</p> <p>Dependent on the card issuer, the statement will typically show the dynamic descriptor appended to the merchant's existing business name separated by the "/" character; additional characters will be truncated</p> |

| Variable Name  | Type and Limits | Description |
|--|-----------------|-------------|
| <div> <b>NOTE:</b> The 22-character maximum limit must take the "/" into account as one of the characters </div> |                 |             |

## 2.12 Purchase Correction

Restores the full amount of a previous Purchase, Pre-Authorization Completion or Force Post transaction to the cardholder's card, and removes any record of it from the cardholder's statement.

This transaction can be used against a Purchase or Pre-Authorization Completion transaction that occurred same day provided that the batch containing the original transaction remains open.

### XML transaction object

```
<purchasecorrection>
```

### Purchase Correction transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT purchasecorrection (order_id, txn_number, crypt_type)>
```

### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits | Description  |
|--------------------------|-----------------|--|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | String<br>N/A   | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup  |
| API token<br><api_token> | String<br>N/A   | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

**Optional connection object field**

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits                  | Description   |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|---|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br><br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required </div> |

**Purchase Correction transaction request fields – Required**

| Variable Name                      | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|------------------------------------|--|---|
| order ID<br><order_id>             | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alpha-numeric-A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces                         | <p>Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.</p> <p>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction.</p>  |
| transaction number<br><txn_number> | <i>String</i><br><br>255-character, alpha-numeric, hyphens or underscores<br><br>variable length | <p>Used to reference the original transaction when performing a follow-on transaction (i.e., Pre-Authorization Completion, Purchase Correction or Refund)</p> <p>This value is returned in the response of the original transaction</p> <p>Pre-Authorization Completion: references a Pre-Authorization</p> <p>Refund/Purchase Correction: ref-</p> |

| Variable Name                                 | Type and Limits                           | Description   |
|---|---|---|
| electronic commerce indicator<br><crypt_type> | <i>String</i><br>1-character alphanumeric | <p>erences a Purchase or Pre-Authorization Completion</p> <p>Describes the category of e-commerce transaction being processed. Allowable values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Single</li> <li>2 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Recurring</li> <li>3 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Instalment</li> <li>4 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Unknown classification</li> <li>5 – Authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</li> <li>6 – Non-authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</li> <li>7 – SSL-enabled merchant</li> </ul> <p><b>In Credential on File transactions where the request field e-commerce indicator is also being sent:</b> the allowable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for <b>payment indicator</b>, as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</li> <li>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</li> <li>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</li> <li>if payment indicator = U, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7</li> <li>if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</li> </ul> |



**Purchase Correction transaction request fields – Optional**

| Variable Name                          | Type and Limits                               | Description   |
|--|---|---|
| shipping indicator<br><ship_indicator> | <i>String</i><br><br>1-character alphanumeric | <p>Used to identify completion transactions that require multiple shipments, also referred to as multiple completions</p> <p>By default, if shipping indicator is not sent, the Pre-Authorization Completion is listed as final</p> <p>To indicate that the Pre-Authorization Completion is to be left open by the issuer as supplemental shipments or completions are pending, submit shipping indicator with a value of P</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <p>P – Partial</p> <p>F – Final</p> |

## 2.13 Card Verification

Verifies the validity of the credit card, expiry date and any additional details (such as the Card Verification Digits or Address Verification details). It does not verify the available amount or lock any funds on the credit card.

**XML transaction object**

```
<card_verification>
```

**Card Verification transaction object definition**

```
<!ELEMENT card_verification (order_id, cust_id?, pan, expdate, crypt_type,
avs_info?, cvd_info?, cof_info?)>
```

**Core connection object fields (all API transactions)**

| Variable Name          | Type and Limits          | Description   |
|------------------------|--------------------------|---|
| store ID<br><store_id> | <i>String</i><br><br>N/A | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup |
| API token              | <i>String</i>            | Unique alphanumeric string assigned                               |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description  |
|---------------|-----------------|--|
| <api_token>   | N/A             | <p>by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

### Optional connection object field

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits                  | Description   |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|---|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br><br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required</p> </div> |

### Card Verification transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name          | Type and Limits   | Description  |
|------------------------|---|--|
| order ID<br><order_id> | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alphanumeric-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces | <p>Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.</p> <p>For Refund, Completion and Purchase</p> |

| Variable Name                                 | Type and Limits                                   | Description  |
|---|---|--|
|   |   | Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction.  |
| credit card number<br><pan>                   | <i>String</i><br>max 20-character alphanumeric    | Credit card number, usually 16 digits—field can be maximum 20 digits in support of future expansion of card number ranges.<br><br>Carries the token for network tokenization transactions.   |
| expiry date<br><expdate>                      | <i>String</i><br>4-character alphanumeric<br>YYMM | Expiry date of the credit card, in YYMM format.<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> This is the reverse of the MMY date format that is presented on the card.  |
| electronic commerce indicator<br><crypt_type> | <i>String</i><br>1-character alphanumeric         | Describes the category of e-commerce transaction being processed. Allowable values are:<br><br>1 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Single<br>2 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Recurring<br>3 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Instalment<br>4 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Unknown classification<br>5 – Authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)<br>6 – Non-authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)<br>7 – SSL-enabled merchant<br><br><b>In Credential on File transactions where the request field e-commerce indicator is also being sent:</b> the allowable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for <b>payment indicator</b> , as follows:<br><br>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description  |
|---------------|-----------------|--|
|               |                 | for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6  |
|               |                 | if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6    |
|               |                 | if payment indicator = C, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7 |
|               |                 | if payment indicator = U, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7       |
|               |                 | if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7 |

### Card Verification transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|---|--|--|
| customer ID<br><cust_id>  | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alphanumeric<br><br><b>NOTE:</b><br>Some special characters are not allowed:<br>< > \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \ | Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier<br><br>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center |
| AVS Information<br><avs_info>   | <i>Object</i><br><br>N/A   | Contains fields applying to the Address Verification Service (AVS) e-fraud tool                                      |
| For information on request fields for this object, see <a href="#">xrefHere</a> |  |  |
| CVD Information<br><cvd_info>   | <i>Object</i><br><br>N/A   | Contains fields related to the Card Validation Digits e-fraud tool   |
| For information on request fields for this object, see <a href="#">xrefHere</a> |  |  |
| Credential on File Information<br><cof_info>                                    | <i>Object</i><br><br>N/A   | Required when storing cardholder credentials or using these credentials in subsequent transactions.                  |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description |
|---------------|-----------------|-------------|
|---------------|-----------------|-------------|

For information on request fields for this object, see [xrefHere](#)

## 2.14 Batch Close

Takes the funds from all Purchase, Completion, Refund and Force Post transactions so that they will be deposited or debited the following business day.

For funds to be deposited the following business day, the batch must close before 11 pm Eastern Time.

### XML transaction object

```
<batchclose>
```

### Batch Close transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT batchclose (ecr_number)>
```

### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
| store ID      | <i>String</i>   | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup   |
| <store_id>    | N/A             |   |
| API token     | <i>String</i>   | Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation   |
| <api_token>   | N/A             |   |
|               |                 | To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs: |
|               |                 | Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a>  |
|               |                 | Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a>   |

**Optional connection object field**

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits                  | Description  |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|--|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br><br>true/false | Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully<br><br>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required |

**Batch Close transaction request fields – Required**

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits          | Description  |
|---|--------------------------|--|
| electronic cash register (ECR) number<br><ecr_number> | <i>String</i><br><br>N/A | Identification number assigned to a particular electronic cash register; provided by Moneris |

## 2.15 Open Totals

Returns the details about the currently open batch.

Similar to the Batch Close; the difference is that it does not close the batch for settlement.

**XML transaction object**

<opentotals>

**Open Totals transaction object definition**

<!ELEMENT opentotals (ecr\_number)>

**Core connection object fields (all API transactions)**

| Variable Name          | Type and Limits          | Description   |
|------------------------|--------------------------|---|
| store ID<br><store_id> | <i>String</i><br><br>N/A | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup |

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits | Description  |
|--------------------------|-----------------|--|
| API token<br><api_token> | String<br>N/A   | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

### Optional connection object field

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits       | Description  |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------|--|
| status check<br><status_check> | Boolean<br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required</p> </div> |

### Open Totals transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits | Description  |
|---|-----------------|--|
| electronic cash register (ECR) number<br><ecr_number> | String<br>N/A   | Identification number assigned to a particular electronic cash register; provided by Moneris |

## 3 Credential on File

- 3.1 About Credential on File
- 3.2 Credential on File Info Object and Variables
- 3.3 Credential on File Transaction Types
- 3.4 Initial Transactions in Credential on File
- 3.5 Credential on File and Converting Temporary Tokens
- 3.6 Card Verification and Credential on File Transactions

### 3.1 About Credential on File

When storing customers' credit card credentials for use in future authorizations, or when using these credentials in subsequent transactions, card brands now require merchants to indicate this in the transaction request.

In the Moneris API, this is handled by the Moneris Gateway via the inclusion of the Credential on File info object and its variables in the transaction request.

While the requirements for handling Credential on File transactions relate to Visa, Mastercard and Discover only, in order to avoid confusion and prevent error, please implement these changes for all card types and the Moneris system will then correctly flow the relevant card data values as appropriate.

**NOTE:** If either the first transaction or a Card Verification authorization is declined when attempting to store cardholder credentials, those credentials cannot be stored —therefore the merchant must not use the credential for any subsequent transactions.

### 3.2 Credential on File Info Object and Variables

The Credential on File Info object is nested within the request for the applicable transaction types.

Credential on File Info Object:

cof

Variables in the cof object:



Payment Indicator

Payment Information

Issuer ID

For more information, see A.7 Definition of Request Fields – Credential on File

### 3.3 Credential on File Transaction Types

The Credential on File Info object applies to the following transaction types:

- Purchase
- Pre-Authorization
- Purchase with 3-D Secure – cavv\_purchase
- Pre-Authorization with 3-D Secure – cavv\_preauth
- Purchase with Vault – res\_purchase\_cc
- Pre-Authorization with Vault – res\_preauth\_cc
- Card Verification
- Card Verification with Vault – res\_card\_verification\_cc
- Vault Add Credit Card – res\_add\_cc
- Vault Update Credit Card – res\_update\_cc
- Recurring Billing transactions

### 3.4 Initial Transactions in Credential on File

When sending an *initial* transaction with the Credential on File Info object, i.e., a transaction request where the cardholder's credentials are being stored for the *first* time, it is important to understand the following:

- You must send the cardholder's Card Verification Digits (CVD)
- **Issuer ID** will be sent without a value on the initial transaction, because it is received in the response to that initial transaction; for all *subsequent* merchant-initiated transactions and all administrative transactions you send this **Issuer ID**
- The **payment information** field should always be set to a value of 0 on the first transaction
- The **payment indicator** field should be set to the value that is appropriate for the transaction

### 3.5 Credential on File and Converting Temporary Tokens

In the event you decide to convert a temporary token representing cardholder credentials into a permanent token, these credentials become stored credentials, and therefore it is necessary to send Credential on File information.

For Vault Temporary Token Add transactions where you subsequently decide to convert the temporary token into a permanent token (stored credentials):

1. Send a transaction request that includes the Credential on File Info object to get the Issuer ID; this can be a Card Verification, Purchase or Pre-Authorization request
2. After completing the transaction, send the Vault Add Token request with the Credential on File object in order to convert the temporary token to a permanent one.

For more information about Vault Temporary Token Add transaction, see 4.5.8 Vault Temporary Token Add – res\_temp\_add.

### 3.6 Card Verification and Credential on File Transactions

In the absence of a Purchase or Pre-Authorization, a Card Verification transaction is used to get the unique issuer ID value (**issuerId**) that is used in subsequent Credential on File transactions. Issuer ID is a variable included in the nested Credential on File Info object.

For all first-time transactions, including Card Verification transactions, you must also request the cardholder's Card Verification Details (CVD). For more on CVD, see 1 Card Validation Digits (CVD).

The Card Verification request, including the Credential on File Info object, must be sent immediately prior to storing cardholder credentials.

For information about Card Verification, see 2.13 Card Verification.

### 3.6.1 When to Use Card Verification With COF

If you are not sending a Purchase or Pre-Authorization transaction (i.e., you are not charging the customer immediately), you must use Card Verification (or in the case of Vault Add Token, Card Verification with Vault) first before running the transaction in order to get the Issuer ID.

Transactions this applies to:

Vault Add Credit Card – res\_add\_cc

Vault Update Credit Card – res\_update\_cc

Recurring Billing transactions, if:

- the first transaction is set to start on a future date

### 3.6.2 Credential on File and Vault Add Token

For Vault Add Token transactions:

1. Send Card Verification with Vault transaction request including the Credential on File object to get the Issuer ID
2. Send the Vault Add Token request including the Credential on File object (with Issuer ID only; other fields are not applicable)

### 3.6.3 Credential on File and Vault Update Credit Card

For Vault Update Credit Card transactions where you are updating the credit card number:

1. Send Card Verification transaction request including the Credential on File object to get the Issuer ID
2. Send the Vault Update Credit Card request including the Credential on File Info object .

### 3.6.4 Credential on File and Vault Add Credit Card

For Vault Add Credit Card transactions:

1. Send Card Verification transaction request including the Credential on File object to get the Issuer ID
2. Send the Vault Add Credit Card request including the Credential on File Info object

### 3.6.5 Credential on File and Recurring Billing

**NOTE:** The value of the **payment indicator** field must be **R** when sending Recurring Billing transactions.

For Recurring Billing transactions which are set to start **immediately**:

1. Send a Purchase transaction request with both the Recurring Billing and Credential on File info objects (with Recurring Billing object field **start now** = true)

For Recurring Billing transactions which are set to start on a **future** date:

1. Send Card Verification transaction request including the Credential on File info object to get the Issuer ID
2. Send Purchase transaction request with the Recur and Credential on File info objects included

For updating a Recurring Billing series where you are updating the card number (does not apply if you are only modifying the schedule or amount in a recurring series):

1. Send Card Verification request including the Credential on File info object to get the Issuer ID
2. Send a Recurring Billing Update transaction

## 0.1 Definition of Request Fields – Credential on File

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits   | Description   |
|--------------------------|---|---|
| issuer ID<br><issuer_id> | <i>String</i><br>15-character alphanumeric<br>variable length | Unique identifier for the cardholder's stored credentials<br><br>Sent back in the response from the card brand when processing a Credential on File transaction |

| Variable Name       | Type and Limits        | Description   |
|---------------------|------------------------|---|
|                     |                        | <p>If the cardholder's credentials are being stored for the first time, and the issuer ID was returned in the response, you must save the issuer ID on your system to use in subsequent Credential on File transactions (applies to merchant-initiated transactions only)</p> <p>The issuer ID must be saved to your systems when returned from Moneris Gateway in the response data, regardless if the value was received or not</p> <p>As a best practice, if the issuer ID is not returned and you received a value of NULL instead, store that value and send it in the subsequent transaction</p>  |
| payment indicator   | <i>String</i>          | Indicates the current or intended use of the credentials  |
| <payment_indicator> | 1-character alphabetic | <p>Possible values for first transactions:</p> <p>C - unscheduled Credential on File (first transactions only)</p> <p>R - recurring</p> <p>V - recurring variable payment transaction</p> <p>Possible values for subsequent transactions:</p> <p>R - recurring</p> <p>V - recurring variable payment transaction</p> <p>U - unscheduled merchant-initiated transaction</p> <p>Z - unscheduled customer-initiated transaction</p> <p>In Credential on File transactions where the request field e-commerce indicator is also being sent, the acceptable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for payment indicator, as follows:</p> |

| Variable Name                                | Type and Limits                      | Description   |
|--|--------------------------------------|---|
|  |                                      | <p>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = U, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> |
| payment information<br><payment_information> | <i>String</i><br>1-character numeric | Describes whether the transaction is the first or subsequent in the series<br><br>Possible values:<br><br>0 - first transaction in a series (storing payment details provided by the cardholder)<br><br>2 - subsequent transactions (using previously stored payment details)   |

## 4 Vault Transaction Set

- 4.1 About the Vault Transaction Set
- 4.2 Vault Request DTD
- 4.3 Vault Response DTD
- 4.4 Vault and Installments
- 4.5 Vault Administrative Transactions
- 4.6 Vault Financial Transactions

### 4.1 About the Vault Transaction Set

The Vault feature allows merchants to create customer profiles, edit those profiles, and use them to process transactions without having to enter financial information each time. Customer profiles store customer data essential to processing transactions, including credit and signature debit.

The Vault is a complement to the Recurring Billing module. It securely stores customer account information on Moneris secure servers. This allows merchants to bill customers for routine products or services when an invoice is due.

### 4.2 Vault Request DTD

```
<!-- The Resolver CA Request DTD -->

<!-- Main Elements -->

<!ELEMENT request (store_id, api_token, (res_add_cc | res_update_cc | res_delete | res_
lookup_full | res_lookup_masked | res_get_expiring | res_purchase_cc | res_preauth_cc | res_
ind_refund_cc | res_iscorporatecard | resinstallmentLookup)>
<!ELEMENT store_id (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT api_token (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT res_add_cc (cust_id?,phone?,email?,note?,pan?,expdate, crypt_type,avs_info?,cof_
info?)>
<!ELEMENT res_update_cc (data_key,cust_id?,phone?,email?,note?,pan?,expdate?,crypt_type?,avs_
info?,cof_info?)>
<!-- If "pan", "expdate", or "crypt_type" are sent then they are mandatory -->
<!ELEMENT res_delete (data_key)>
<!ELEMENT res_lookup_full (data_key)>
<!ELEMENT res_lookup_masked (data_key)>
<!ELEMENT res_get_expiring EMPTY> <!-- nothing else is required, returns all CC cards that
expire within the current or next month -->
<!ELEMENT res_purchase_cc (data_key,order_id,cust_id?,amount,crypt_type,cust_info?,avs_
info?,cvd_info?,recur?,cof_info?, installment_info?)>
<!-- if a cust_id is sent, it will be submitted with the purchase but not stored in profile -
->
<!-- if a cust_id is not sent, then will pull cust_id from profile and submit with purchase -
->
<!-- if no cust_id is sent or in profile then none will be sent with purchase -->
```

```
<!-- above cust_id behaviour also applies to avs_info -->
<ELEMENT res_preauth_cc (data_key,order_id,cust_id?,amount,crypt_type,cust_info?,avs_
info?,cvd_info?,cof_info?, installment_info?)>
<ELEMENT res_ind_refund_cc (data_key,order_id,cust_id?,amount,crypt_type)>
<ELEMENT res_iscorporatecard (data_key)>
<ELEMENT res_card_verification_cc (data_key,order_id,crypt_type,avs_info?,cvd_info?,cof_
info?)>
<ELEMENT res_forcepost_cc (data_key,order_id,cust_id?,amount,crypt_type,auth_code)>
<ELEMENT res_temp_add (pan, expdate, crypt_type, duration, data_key_format?)>
<ELEMENT res_add_token (data_key,crypt_type,expdate,cof_info,cust_id?,avs_
info?,email?,phone?,note?,data_key_format?)>

<ELEMENT data_key (#PCDATA)>
<ELEMENT order_id (#PCDATA)>
<ELEMENT cust_id (#PCDATA)>
<ELEMENT phone (#PCDATA)>
<ELEMENT email (#PCDATA)>
<ELEMENT note (#PCDATA)>
<ELEMENT pan (#PCDATA)>
<ELEMENT expdate (#PCDATA)>
<ELEMENT crypt_type (#PCDATA)>
<ELEMENT amount (#PCDATA)>
<ELEMENT auth_code (#PCDATA)>
<!--The following are the Installments by Visa transactions -->
<ELEMENT resInstallmentLookup (store_id, api_token, order_id, amount, data_key, expdate)

<!-- start AVS -->
<ELEMENT avs_info (avs_street_number, avs_street_name, avs_zipcode)>
<ELEMENT avs_street_number (#PCDATA)>
<ELEMENT avs_street_name (#PCDATA)>
<ELEMENT avs_zipcode (#PCDATA)>

<!-- start CVD -->
<ELEMENT cvd_info (cvd_indicator, cvd_value)>
<ELEMENT cvd_indicator (#PCDATA)>
<ELEMENT cvd_value (#PCDATA)>

<!-- Recur info -->
<ELEMENT recur (recur_unit, start_now, start_date, num_recur, period, recur_amount)>
<ELEMENT recur_unit (#PCDATA)>
<ELEMENT start_now (#PCDATA)>
<ELEMENT start_date (#PCDATA)>
<ELEMENT num_recur (#PCDATA)>
<ELEMENT period (#PCDATA)>
<ELEMENT recur_amount (#PCDATA)>

<!-- start COF -->
<ELEMENT cof_info (payment_indicator, payment_information, issuer_id)>
<ELEMENT payment_indicator (#PCDATA)>
<ELEMENT payment_information (#PCDATA)>
<ELEMENT issuer_id (#PCDATA)>

<!-- cust info -->
<ELEMENT cust_info (billing, shipping, email, instructions, item+)>
<ELEMENT billing (first_name, last_name, company_name, address, city, province, postal_code,
country, phone_number, fax, tax1, tax2, tax3, shipping_cost)>
<ELEMENT shipping (first_name, last_name, company_name, address, city, province, postal_
code, country, phone_number, fax, tax1, tax2, tax3, shipping_cost)>
<!-- ELEMENT email (#PCDATA) -->
<ELEMENT instructions (#PCDATA)>
<ELEMENT item (name, quantity, product_code, extended_amount)>
<ELEMENT first_name (#PCDATA)>
<ELEMENT last_name (#PCDATA)>
<ELEMENT company_name (#PCDATA)>
<ELEMENT address (#PCDATA)>
<ELEMENT city (#PCDATA)>
```



```

<!ELEMENT province (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT postal_code (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT country (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT phone_number (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT fax (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT name (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT quantity (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT product_code (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT extended_amount (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT tax1 (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT tax2 (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT tax3 (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT shipping_cost (#PCDATA)>
<!-- start installment info -->
<!ELEMENT installment_info (plan_id, plan_id_ref, tac_version)>

```

### 4.3 Vault Response DTD

```

<!-- The Response DTD -->

<!-- Main Elements -->

<!ELEMENT response receipt>
<!ELEMENT receipt (DataKey, ReceiptId, ReferenceNum, ResponseCode, AuthCode, ISO, Message,
TransTime, TransDate, TransType, Complete, TransAmount, CardType,
TransID, TimedOut, CvdResultCode, AvsResultCode, RecurSuccess,
CorporateCard, ResSuccess, PaymentType, ResolveData, IssuerId)>
<!ELEMENT DataKey (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ReceiptId (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ReferenceNum (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ResponseCode (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT AuthCode (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ISO (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT TransTime (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT TransDate (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT TransType (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT Complete (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT Message (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT TransAmount (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT CardType (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT TransID (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT TimedOut (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT CvdResultCode (ECR)>
<!ELEMENT AvsResultCode (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT RecurSuccess (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT CorporateCard (#PCDATA)> <!-- true or false -->
<!ELEMENT ResSuccess (#PCDATA)> <!-- true or false -->
<!ELEMENT PaymentType (#PCDATA)> <!-- cc -->
<!ELEMENT IssuerId (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ResolveData (data_key?, payment_type?, cust_id, phone, email, note,
masked_pan?, pan?, expdate?, crypt_type?,
avs_street_number?, avs_street_name?, avs_zipcode?)>

<!-- the following are only returned with res_get_expiring -->
<!ELEMENT data_key (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT payment_type (#PCDATA)>

<!-- the following are always returned, even if they are blank in the profile -->
<!ELEMENT cust_id (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT phone (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT email (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT note (#PCDATA)>

<!-- the following are depending on what is stored in the profile -->

```

```
<!-- ELEMENT masked_pan (#PCDATA) -->
<!-- ELEMENT expdate (#PCDATA) -->
<!-- ELEMENT crypt_type (#PCDATA) -->
<!-- ELEMENT avs_street_number (#PCDATA) -->
<!-- ELEMENT avs_street_name (#PCDATA) -->
<!-- ELEMENT avs_zipcode (#PCDATA) -->

<!-- the following are only returned with res_lookup_full -->
<!-- ELEMENT pan (#PCDATA) -->

<!-- the following are only returned with resInstallmentLookup transactions -->
<!-- ELEMENT EligibleInstallmentPlans (PlanCount, PlanDetails (PlanId, PlanIdRef, Name, Type,
NumInstallments, InstallmentFrequency, TotalFees, TotalPlanCost, APR, Tac (TacCount,
TacDetails (Text, Url, Version, LanguageCode)), PromotionInfo (PromotionCode, PromotionId),
FirstInstallment (UpfrontFee, Amount), LastInstallment (InstallmentFee, Amount)) -->

<!-- the following are only returned in the response for Visa Installments with res_Purchase
and res_Preauth transactions -->
<!-- ELEMENT InstallmentResults (PlanID, PlanRef, TacVersion, PlanAcceptanceID, PlanStatus,
PlanResponse) -->
```

## 4.4 Vault and Installments

Installments functionality is also available on transactions using cardholder credentials stored in the Moneris Vault. To offer this feature to the customer, send the Vault Installment Plan Lookup transaction prior to running a Purchase with Vault or Pre-Authorization with Vault.

For more about Installments, see 6 Installments by Visa

## 4.5 Vault Administrative Transactions

Administrative transactions allow you to perform such tasks as creating new Vault profiles, deleting existing Vault profiles and updating profile information.

Some Vault Administrative Transactions require the Credential on File object to be sent with the **issuer ID** field only.

### 4.5.1 Vault Add Credit Card – res\_add\_cc

Creates a new credit card profile, and generates a unique data key which can be obtained from the Receipt object.

This data key is the profile identifier that all future financial Vault transactions will use to associate with the saved information.

#### XML transaction object

```
<res_add_cc>
```

### Vault Add Credit Card transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT res_add_cc (cust_id?, phone?, email?, note?, pan, expdate, crypt_type, avs_info?, cof_info?)>
```

### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits | Description  |
|--------------------------|-----------------|--|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | String<br>N/A   | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup  |
| API token<br><api_token> | String<br>N/A   | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

### Optional connection object field

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits       | Description  |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------|--|
| status check<br><status_check> | Boolean<br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required</p> </div> |

## Vault Add Credit Card transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name                                 | Type and Limits   | Description   |
|---|---|---|
| credit card number<br><pan>                   | <i>String</i><br><br>max 20-character alpha-numeric       | Credit card number, usually 16 digits —field can be maximum 20 digits in support of future expansion of card number ranges.<br><br>Carries the token for network tokenization transactions.   |
| expiry date<br><expdate>                      | <i>String</i><br><br>4-character alphanumeric<br><br>YYMM | Expiry date of the credit card, in YYMM format.<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> This is the reverse of the MMY date format that is presented on the card.   |
| electronic commerce indicator<br><crypt_type> | <i>String</i><br><br>1-character alphanumeric             | Describes the category of e-commerce transaction being processed. Allowable values are:<br><br>1 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Single<br><br>2 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Recurring<br><br>3 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Instalment<br><br>4 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Unknown classification<br><br>5 – Authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)<br><br>6 – Non-authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)<br><br>7 – SSL-enabled merchant<br><br><b>In Credential on File transactions where the request field e-commerce indicator is also being sent:</b> the allowable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for <b>payment indicator</b> , as follows:<br><br>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6<br><br>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description  |
|---------------|-----------------|--|
|               |                 | <p>for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = U, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> |

### Vault Add Credit Card transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name                 | Type and Limits   | Description  |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| customer ID<br><cust_id>      | <i>String</i><br>50-character alphanumeric<br><div> <b>NOTE:</b><br/>           Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>           &lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \         </div> | Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier<br>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center           |
| phone number<br><phone>       | <i>String</i><br>30-character alphanumeric  | Customer's phone number<br>Can be sent in when creating or updating a Vault profile  |
| email address<br><email>      | <i>String</i><br>30-character alphanumeric  | Customer's email address<br>Can be sent in when creating or updating a Vault profile                                       |
| note<br><note>                | <i>String</i><br>30-character alphanumeric  | Used for any supplementary information related to the customer<br>Can be sent in when creating or updating a Vault profile |
| AVS Information<br><avs_info> | <i>Object</i><br>N/A  | Contains fields applying to the Address Verification Service (AVS) e-fraud tool  |

### 4.5.2 Vault Update Credit Card – res\_update\_cc

Updates an existing Vault profile (referencing the profile's unique **data key**) with cardholder information.

Information contained within a credit card profile is updated as indicated by the submitted fields; if any field representing an item of cardholder information is not sent in this request, that item will remain unchanged in the profile.

If the Vault profile is being updated with a new credit card number, then you first need to send a Purchase, Pre-Authorization or Card Verification transaction, with the Credential on File Info object included, before performing Vault Update Credit Card. If the credit card number is not one of the profile items being updated, this step is not required.

#### Things to Consider:

- To update a specific element in the profile, set that element using the corresponding set method
- When updating a credit card number, first send a Purchase, Pre-Authorization, or Card Verification with the Credential on File Info object before sending this transaction; send the issuer ID received in the response in the subsequent Vault Update Credit Card request
- If the credit card number is not one of the profile items being updated, the Credential on File info object is not required

#### XML transaction object

```
<res_update_cc>
```

#### Vault Update Credit Card transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT res_update_cc (data_key, cust_id?, phone?, email?, note?,pan?,  
expdate?, crypt_type?, avs_info?, cof_info?)>
```

```
<!-- If "pan", "expdate", or "crypt_type" are sent then they are mandatory -->
```

#### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
| store ID      | <i>String</i>   | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup |
| <store_id>    | N/A             |   |

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits          | Description  |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|--|
| API token<br><api_token> | <i>String</i><br><br>N/A | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

### Optional connection object field

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits                  | Description   |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|---|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br><br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required</p> </div> |

### Vault Update Credit Card transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name          | Type and Limits                                | Description   |
|------------------------|--|---|
| data key<br><data_key> | <i>String</i><br><br>25-character alphanumeric | <p>Unique identifier for a Vault profile, and used in future Vault financial transactions to associate a transaction with that profile</p> <p>Data key is generated by Moneris and returned to you in the Receipt object when the profile is first registered</p> |

## Vault Update Credit Card transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name                                 | Type and Limits   | Description   |
|---|---|---|
| customer ID<br><cust_id>                      | <i>String</i><br>50-character alphanumeric<br><div> <b>NOTE:</b><br/>           Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>           &lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \         </div> | Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier<br><br>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center  |
| phone number<br><phone>                       | <i>String</i><br>30-character alphanumeric  | Customer's phone number<br><br>Can be sent in when creating or updating a Vault profile   |
| email address<br><email>                      | <i>String</i><br>30-character alphanumeric  | Customer's email address<br><br>Can be sent in when creating or updating a Vault profile  |
| note<br><note>                                | <i>String</i><br>30-character alphanumeric  | Used for any supplementary information related to the customer<br><br>Can be sent in when creating or updating a Vault profile  |
| credit card number<br><pan>                   | <i>String</i><br>max 20-character alphanumeric  | Credit card number, usually 16 digits —field can be maximum 20 digits in support of future expansion of card number ranges.<br><br>Carries the token for network tokenization transactions. |
| expiry date<br><expdate>                      | <i>String</i><br>4-character alphanumeric<br><br>YYMM   | Expiry date of the credit card, in YYMM format.<br><br><div> <b>NOTE:</b> This is the reverse of the MMY date format that is presented on the card.         </div>                          |
| electronic commerce indicator<br><crypt_type> | <i>String</i><br>1-character alphanumeric   | Describes the category of e-commerce transaction being processed. Allowable values are:   |



| Variable Name  | Type and Limits          | Description  |
|--|--------------------------|--|
|  |                          | <p>1 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Single</p> <p>2 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Recurring</p> <p>3 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Instalment</p> <p>4 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Unknown classification</p> <p>5 – Authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</p> <p>6 – Non-authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</p> <p>7 – SSL-enabled merchant</p> <p><b>In Credential on File transactions where the request field e-commerce indicator is also being sent:</b> the allowable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for <b>payment indicator</b>, as follows:</p> <p>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = U, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> |
| AVS Information<br><avs_info>  | <i>String</i><br><br>N/A | Contains fields applying to the Address Verification Service (AVS) e-fraud tool  |
| <div>For information on request fields for this object, see <a href="#">xrefHere</a></div> |                          |  |
| Credential on File Information<br><cof_info>   | <i>String</i><br><br>N/A | Required when storing cardholder credentials or using these credentials in subsequent transactions.  |

| Variable Name  | Type and Limits | Description |
|--|-----------------|-------------|
| <div>For information on request fields for this object, see xrefHere</div> |                 |             |

### 4.5.3 Vault Delete – res\_delete

Deletes an existing Vault profile of any type using the unique data key that was assigned when the profile was added.

**NOTE:** Once a profile is deleted, the information that was saved within can no longer be retrieved.

#### XML transaction object

```
<res_delete>
```

#### Vault Delete transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT res_delete (data_key)>
```

#### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits | Description  |
|--------------------------|-----------------|--|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | String<br>N/A   | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup  |
| API token<br><api_token> | String<br>N/A   | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

**Optional connection object field**

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits                  | Description   |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|---|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br><br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required </div> |

**Vault Delete transaction request fields – Required**

| Variable Name          | Type and Limits                                | Description   |
|------------------------|--|---|
| data key<br><data_key> | <i>String</i><br><br>25-character alphanumeric | <p>Unique identifier for a Vault profile, and used in future Vault financial transactions to associate a transaction with that profile</p> <p>Data key is generated by Moneris and returned to you in the Receipt object when the profile is first registered</p> |

**4.5.4 Vault Lookup Full – res\_lookup\_full**

Verifies what is currently saved under the Vault profile associated with the given data key. The response to this transaction returns the latest active data for that profile.

Unlike Vault Lookup Masked (which returns a masked credit card number), this transaction returns both the masked and unmasked credit card number.

**XML transaction object**

<res\_lookup\_full>

**Vault Lookup Full transaction object definition**

&lt;!ELEMENT res\_lookup\_full (data\_key)&gt;

**Core connection object fields (all API transactions)**

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits      | Description  |
|--------------------------|----------------------|--|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | <i>String</i><br>N/A | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup  |
| API token<br><api_token> | <i>String</i><br>N/A | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

**Optional connection object field**

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits              | Description  |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required</p> </div> |

**Vault Lookup Full transaction request fields – Required**

| Variable Name          | Type and Limits                            | Description  |
|------------------------|--|--|
| data key<br><data_key> | <i>String</i><br>25-character alphanumeric | Unique identifier for a Vault profile, and used in future Vault financial transactions to associate a transaction with that profile<br><br>Data key is generated by Moneris and returned to you in the Receipt object when the profile is first registered |

**4.5.5 Vault Lookup Masked – res\_lookup\_masked**

Verifies what is currently saved under the Vault profile associated with the given data key. The response to this transaction returns the latest active data for that profile.

Unlike Vault Lookup Full (which returns both the masked and the unmasked credit card numbers), this transaction only returns the masked credit card number.

**XML transaction object**

<res\_lookup\_masked>

**Vault Lookup Masked transaction object definition**

<!ELEMENT res\_lookup\_masked (data\_key)>

**Core connection object fields (all API transactions)**

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits      | Description  |
|--------------------------|----------------------|--|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | <i>String</i><br>N/A | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup  |
| API token<br><api_token> | <i>String</i><br>N/A | Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation<br><br>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:<br><br>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.-">https://esqa.-</a> |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
|               |                 | <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">moneris.com/mpg/</a><br>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a> |

#### Optional connection object field

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits              | Description   |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|---|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required </div> |

#### Vault Lookup Masked transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name          | Type and Limits                            | Description   |
|------------------------|--|---|
| data key<br><data_key> | <i>String</i><br>25-character alphanumeric | <p>Unique identifier for a Vault profile, and used in future Vault financial transactions to associate a transaction with that profile</p> <p>Data key is generated by Moneris and returned to you in the Receipt object when the profile is first registered</p> |

#### 4.5.6 Vault Is Corporate Card – res\_iscorporatecard

Determines whether a profile has a corporate card registered within it.

After sending the transaction, the response field to the Receipt object's `getCorporateCard` method is either true or false depending on whether the associated card is a corporate card.

**NOTE:** This transaction supports both temporary and permanent tokens.

### XML transaction object

```
<res_iscorporatecard>
```

### Vault Is Corporate Card transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT res_iscorporatecard (data_key)>
```

### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits      | Description  |
|--------------------------|----------------------|--|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | <i>String</i><br>N/A | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup  |
| API token<br><api_token> | <i>String</i><br>N/A | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

### Optional connection object field

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits              | Description  |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with</p> |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description  |
|---------------|-----------------|--|
|               |                 | all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required |

### Vault Is Corporate Card transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name          | Type and Limits                            | Description  |
|------------------------|--|--|
| data key<br><data_key> | <i>String</i><br>25-character alphanumeric | Unique identifier for a Vault profile, and used in future Vault financial transactions to associate a transaction with that profile<br><br>Data key is generated by Moneris and returned to you in the Receipt object when the profile is first registered |

### 4.5.7 Vault Get Expiring – res\_get\_expiring

Verifies which profiles have credit cards that are expiring during the current and next calendar month.

**EXAMPLE:** if you are processing this transaction on September 30, then it will return all cards that expire(d) in September and October of this year.

When generating a list of profiles with expiring credit cards, only the masked credit card numbers are returned. Can be performed no more than 2 times on any given calendar day.

### XML transaction object

```
<res_get_expiring>
```

### Vault Get Expiring transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT res_get_expiring EMPTY> <!-- nothing else is required, returns all  
CC cards that expire within the current or next month -->
```



**Core connection object fields (all API transactions)**

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits      | Description  |
|--------------------------|----------------------|--|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | <i>String</i><br>N/A | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup  |
| API token<br><api_token> | <i>String</i><br>N/A | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

**Optional connection object field**

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits              | Description   |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|---|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required</p> </div> |

**Vault Get Expiring transaction request fields – Required**

Vault Get Expiring does not require any transaction request variables.

### 4.5.8 Vault Temporary Token Add – res\_temp\_add

Creates a new temporary token credit card profile. This transaction requires a duration to be set to indicate how long the temporary token is to be stored for. This is the API version of Hosted Tokenization.

During the lifetime of this temporary token, it may be used for any other vault transaction before it is permanently deleted from the system. Maximum duration is 15 minutes.

#### XML transaction object

```
<res_temp_add>
```

#### Vault Temporary Token Add transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT res_temp_add (pan, expdate, crypt_type, duration, data_key_format?)
```

#### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits      | Description  |
|--------------------------|----------------------|--|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | <i>String</i><br>N/A | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup  |
| API token<br><api_token> | <i>String</i><br>N/A | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

#### Optional connection object field

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits              | Description  |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with</p> |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
|               |                 | <p>all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required </div> |

### Vault Temporary Token Add transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name                                 | Type and Limits                                   | Description   |
|---|---|---|
| credit card number<br><pan>                   | <i>String</i><br>max 20-character alphanumeric    | <p>Credit card number, usually 16 digits —field can be maximum 20 digits in support of future expansion of card number ranges.</p> <p>Carries the token for network tokenization transactions.</p>  |
| expiry date<br><expdate>                      | <i>String</i><br>4-character alphanumeric<br>YYMM | <p>Expiry date of the credit card, in YYMM format.</p> <div> <b>NOTE:</b> This is the reverse of the MMY Y date format that is presented on the card. </div>  |
| electronic commerce indicator<br><crypt_type> | <i>String</i><br>1-character alphanumeric         | <p>Describes the category of e-commerce transaction being processed. Allowable values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Single</li> <li>2 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Recurring</li> <li>3 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Installment</li> <li>4 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Unknown classification</li> <li>5 – Authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</li> <li>6 – Non-authenticated e-commerce trans-</li> </ul> |

| Variable Name                           | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|---|--|--|
|   |  | <p>action (3-D Secure)</p> <p>7 – SSL-enabled merchant</p> <p><b>In Credential on File transactions where the request field e-commerce indicator is also being sent:</b> the allowable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for <b>payment indicator</b>, as follows:</p> <p>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = U, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> |
| <p>duration</p> <p>&lt;duration&gt;</p> | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>3-character numeric</p> <p>maximum 900 seconds</p> | <p>Amount of time the temporary token should be available</p>  |

#### Vault Temporary Token Add transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits                                      | Description   |
|---|--|---|
| <p>data key format</p> <p>&lt;data_key_format&gt;</p> | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>2-character alphanumeric</p> | <p>Specifies the data key format being returned</p> <p>If left blank, data key format will default to 25-character alphanumeric</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <p>0 – 25 character alphanumeric data key</p> <p>0U – unique 25-character alphanumeric data key</p> |

### 4.5.9 Vault Add Token – res\_add\_token

Converts a Hosted Tokenization temporary token to a permanent Vault token.

A temporary token is valid for 15 minutes after it is created. This transaction must be performed within that time frame if the token is to be changed to a permanent one for future use.

Using the temporary token, send either a Purchase with Vault, Pre-Authorization with Vault or Card Verification with Vault transaction request including the Credential on File object to get the issuer ID.

#### Vault Add Token – res\_add\_token transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT res_add_token (data_key, crypt_type, expdate, cof_info, cust_id?,  
avs_info?, email?, phone?, note?, data_key_format?)>
```

#### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits      | Description  |
|--------------------------|----------------------|--|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | <i>String</i><br>N/A | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup  |
| API token<br><api_token> | <i>String</i><br>N/A | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

#### Optional connection object field

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits              | Description  |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter val-</p> |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
|               |                 | <p>ues, except with status check = true</p> <div> <b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required </div> |

### Vault Add Token – res\_add\_token transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name                                 | Type and Limits                            | Description  |
|---|--|--|
| data key<br><data_key>                        | <i>String</i><br>25-character alphanumeric | <p>Unique identifier for a Vault profile, and used in future Vault financial transactions to associate a transaction with that profile</p> <p>Data key is generated by Moneris and returned to you in the Receipt object when the profile is first registered</p>  |
| electronic commerce indicator<br><crypt_type> | <i>String</i><br>1-character alphanumeric  | <p>Describes the category of e-commerce transaction being processed. Allowable values are:</p> <p>1 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Single</p> <p>2 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Recurring</p> <p>3 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Installment</p> <p>4 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Unknown classification</p> <p>5 – Authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</p> <p>6 – Non-authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</p> <p>7 – SSL-enabled merchant</p> <p><b>In Credential on File transactions where the request field e-commerce indicator is also being sent:</b></p> |

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits   | Description  |
|---|---|--|
|   |   | <p>the allowable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for <b>payment indicator</b>, as follows:</p> <p>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = U, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> |
| expiry date<br><expdate>  | <i>String</i><br><br>4-character alphanumeric<br><br>YYYYMM | Expiry date of the credit card, in YYYYMM format.  |
| <b>NOTE:</b> This field is optional if you already collected it using the the Hosted Tokenization solution; otherwise, it is required |   | <b>NOTE:</b> This is the reverse of the MMY Y date format that is presented on the card.   |

#### Vault Add Token – res\_add\_token transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|--------------------------|--|--|
| customer ID<br><cust_id> | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alphanumeric<br><br><b>NOTE:</b><br>Some special characters are not allowed:<br>< > \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \ | Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier<br><br>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center |
| phone number<br><phone>  | <i>String</i><br><br>30-character alphanumeric   | Customer's phone number<br><br>Can be sent in when creating or   |

| Variable Name                        | Type and Limits                            | Description  |
|--------------------------------------|--|--|
|                                      |  | updating a Vault profile   |
| email address<br><email>             | <i>String</i><br>30-character alphanumeric | Customer's email address<br><br>Can be sent in when creating or updating a Vault profile   |
| note<br><note>                       | <i>String</i><br>30-character alphanumeric | Used for any supplementary information related to the customer<br><br>Can be sent in when creating or updating a Vault profile   |
| AVS Information<br><avs_info>        | <i>Object</i><br>N/A                       | Contains fields applying to the Address Verification Service (AVS) e-fraud tool<br><br>For more information about AVS, see 12.1.2 AVS Information Object   |
| data key format<br><data_key_format> | <i>String</i><br>2-character alphanumeric  | Specifies the data key format being returned<br><br>If left blank, data key format will default to 25-character alphanumeric<br><br>Possible values:<br><br>0 – 25 character alphanumeric data key<br><br>0U – unique 25-character alphanumeric data key |

## 4.6 Vault Financial Transactions

After a financial transaction is complete, the response fields indicate all the values that are currently saved under the profile that was used.

### 4.6.1 Customer ID Changes

Some financial transactions take the customer ID as an optional value. The customer ID may or may not already be in the Vault profile when the transaction is sent. Therefore, it is possible to change the value of the customer ID by performing a financial transaction



The table below shows what the customer ID will be in the response field after a financial transaction is performed.

**Table 1: Customer ID use in response fields**

| Already in profile? | Passed in? | Version used in response            |
|---------------------|------------|-------------------------------------|
| No                  | No         | Customer ID not used in transaction |
| No                  | Yes        | Passed in                           |
| Yes                 | No         | Profile                             |
| Yes                 | Yes        | Passed in                           |

#### 4.6.2 Purchase with Vault – res\_purchase\_cc

This transaction uses the data key to identify a previously registered credit card profile in Vault. The details saved within the profile are then submitted to perform a Purchase transaction.

The data key may be a temporary one generated used Hosted Tokenization, or may be a permanent one from the Vault.

#### XML transaction object

```
<res_purchase_cc>
```

#### Purchase with Vault transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT res_purchase_cc (data_key, order_id, cust_id?, amount, crypt_type,
cust_info?, avs_info?, cvd_info?, recur?, cof_info?, installment_info?, get_
nt_response?)>
```

```
<!-- if a cust_id is sent, it will be submitted with the purchase but not
stored in profile -->
```

```
<!-- if a cust_id is not sent, then will pull cust_id from profile and submit
with purchase -->
```

```
<!-- if no cust_id is sent or in profile then none will be sent with purchase
-->
```

```
<!-- above cust_id behaviour also applies to avs_info -->
```

#### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description                           |
|---------------|-----------------|---------------------------------------|
| store ID      | <i>String</i>   | Unique identifier provided by Moneris |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
| <store_id>    | N/A             | upon merchant account setup   |
| API token     | <i>String</i>   | Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation<br><br>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:<br><br>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a><br><br>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a> |
| <api_token>   | N/A             |   |

### Optional connection object field

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits                  | Description  |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|--|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br><br>true/false | Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully<br><br>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required |

### Purchase with Vault transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name          | Type and Limits                                | Description   |
|------------------------|--|---|
| data key<br><data_key> | <i>String</i><br><br>25-character alphanumeric | Unique identifier for a Vault profile, and used in future Vault financial transactions to associate a transaction with that profile |

| Variable Name                                 | Type and Limits   | Description  |
|---|---|--|
|   |   | Data key is generated by Moneris and returned to you in the Receipt object when the profile is first registered  |
| order ID<br><order_id>                        | String<br><br>50-character alpha-numeric-A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces   | Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.<br><br>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction.  |
| amount<br><amount>                            | String<br><br>10-character decimal<br><br>Up to 7 digits (dollars) + decimal point (.) + 2 digits (cents) after the decimal point<br><br><b>EXAMPLE:</b> 1234567.89 | Transaction dollar amount<br><br>This must contain at least 3 digits, two of which are penny values<br><br>Minimum allowable value = \$0.01, maximum allowable value = \$9999999.99  |
| electronic commerce indicator<br><crypt_type> | String<br><br>1-character alphanumeric  | Describes the category of e-commerce transaction being processed. Allowable values are:<br><br>1 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Single<br><br>2 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Recurring<br><br>3 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Instalment<br><br>4 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Unknown classification<br><br>5 – Authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)<br><br>6 – Non-authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)<br><br>7 – SSL-enabled merchant |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
|               |                 | <p><b>In Credential on File transactions where the request field e-commerce indicator is also being sent:</b> the allowable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for <b>payment indicator</b>, as follows:</p> <p>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = U, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> |

### Purchase with Vault transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name                       | Type and Limits   | Description  |
|-------------------------------------|---|--|
| customer ID<br><cust_id>            | <i>String</i><br>50-character alphanumeric<br><div> <b>NOTE:</b><br/>           Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>           &lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \         </div> | Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier<br><br>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center     |
| Customer Information<br><cust_info> | <i>Object</i><br>N/A<br><div>             For information on request fields for this object, see xrefHere           </div>  | Contains fields that describe miscellaneous customer information, billing and shipping information, and item information |
| AVS Information<br><avs_info>       | <i>Object</i><br>N/A  | Contains fields applying to the Address Verification Service (AVS) e-fraud tool  |

| Variable Name  | Type and Limits | Description   |
|--|-----------------|---|
| <div>For information on request fields for this object, see xrefHere</div> |                 |   |
| CVD Information  | <i>Object</i>   | Contains fields related to the Card Validation Digits e-fraud tool                                  |
| <cvd_info>   | N/A             |   |
| <div>For information on request fields for this object, see xrefHere</div> |                 |   |
| Credential on File Information   | <i>Object</i>   | Required when storing cardholder credentials or using these credentials in subsequent transactions. |
| <cof_info>   | N/A             |   |
| <div>For information on request fields for this object, see xrefHere</div> |                 |   |
| Installment Info   | <i>Object</i>   | Contains request fields related to installments   |
| For fields in this object, see 6.6 Installment Info Object                 | N/A             |   |

### 4.6.3 Pre-Authorization with Vault – res\_preauth\_cc

This transaction uses the data key to identify a previously registered credit card profile in Vault. The details saved within the profile are then submitted to perform a Pre-Authorization transaction.

The data key may be a temporary one generated used Hosted Tokenization, or may be a permanent one from the Vault.

#### XML transaction object

```
<res_preauth_cc>
```

#### Pre-Authorization with Vault transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT res_preauth_cc (data key, order_id, cust_id?, amount, cavv, crypt_type, expdate?, threads_version, threads_server_trans_id, ds_trans_id?, get_nt_response?)>
```

**Core connection object fields (all API transactions)**

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits      | Description  |
|--------------------------|----------------------|--|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | <i>String</i><br>N/A | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup  |
| API token<br><api_token> | <i>String</i><br>N/A | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

**Optional connection object field**

| s                              | Type and Limits              | Description  |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required</p> </div> |

**Pre-Authorization with Vault transaction request fields – Required**

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
| data key      | <i>String</i>   | Unique identifier for a Vault profile, and used in future Vault financial |

| Variable Name  | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|--|--|---|
| <data_key>   | 25-character alphanumeric  | <p>transactions to associate a transaction with that profile</p> <p>Data key is generated by Moneris and returned to you in the Receipt object when the profile is first registered</p>   |
| <p>order ID</p> <p>&lt;order_id&gt;</p>                        | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>50-character alphanumeric-A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces</p>   | <p>Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.</p> <p>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction.</p>  |
| <p>amount</p> <p>&lt;amount&gt;</p>                            | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>10-character decimal</p> <p>Up to 7 digits (dollars) + decimal point (.) + 2 digits (cents) after the decimal point</p> <div>EXAMPLE: 1234567.89</div> | <p>Transaction dollar amount</p> <p>This must contain at least 3 digits, two of which are penny values</p> <p>Minimum allowable value = \$0.01, maximum allowable value = \$9999999.99</p>  |
| <p>electronic commerce indicator</p> <p>&lt;crypt_type&gt;</p> | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>1-character alphanumeric</p>   | <p>Describes the category of e-commerce transaction being processed. Allowable values are:</p> <p>1 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Single</p> <p>2 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Recurring</p> <p>3 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Instalment</p> <p>4 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Unknown classification</p> <p>5 – Authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</p> <p>6 – Non-authenticated e-commerce trans-</p> |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description  |
|---------------|-----------------|--|
|               |                 | <p>action (3-D Secure)</p> <p>7 – SSL-enabled merchant</p> <p><b>In Credential on File transactions where the request field e-commerce indicator is also being sent:</b> the allowable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for <b>payment indicator</b>, as follows:</p> <p>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = U, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> |

### Pre-Authorization with Vault transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name                | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|------------------------------|--|---|
| customer ID<br><cust_id>     | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>50-character alphanumeric</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b><br/>Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>&lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \</p> </div> | <p>Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier</p> <p>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center</p>   |
| is estimated<br>is_estimated | <p><i>Boolean</i></p> <p>true/false</p>  | <p>Indicates if this preauthorization is using an estimated amount. Estimations allow for incrementing the amount held via subsequent incrementalAuth requests. Defaults to false.</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Please note that if this field is true,</p> </div> |



| Variable Name   | Type and Limits          | Description  |
|---|--------------------------|--|
|   |                          | the preauthorization is only eligible for a single Preauthorization Completion. Any completion sent for partial completion is treated as a full completion (ship_indicator= P is treated as = F when is_estimated= true on the original preauth) |
| Customer Information<br><cust_info><br><br>For information on request fields for this object, see xrefHere          | <i>Object</i><br><br>N/A | Contains fields that describe miscellaneous customer information, billing and shipping information, and item information   |
| AVS Information<br><avs_info><br><br>For information on request fields for this object, see xrefHere                | <i>Object</i><br><br>N/A | Contains fields applying to the Address Verification Service (AVS) e-fraud tool  |
| CVD Information<br><cvd_info><br><br>For information on request fields for this object, see xrefHere                | <i>Object</i><br><br>N/A | Contains fields related to the Card Validation Digits e-fraud tool   |
| Credential on File Information<br><cof_info><br><br>For information on request fields for this object, see xrefHere | <i>Object</i><br><br>N/A | Required when storing cardholder credentials or using these credentials in subsequent transactions.  |
| Installment Info<br>For fields in this object, see 6.6 Installment Info Object                                      | <i>Object</i><br><br>N/A | Contains request fields related to installments  |

#### 4.6.4 Independent Refund with Vault – res\_ind\_refund\_cc

This transaction uses the data key to identify a previously registered credit card profile in Vault. The details saved within the profile are then submitted to perform an Independent Refund transaction.

##### XML transaction object

```
<res_ind_refund_cc>
```

##### Independent Refund with Vault transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT res_ind_refund_cc (data_key, order_id, cust_id?, amount, crypt_type, get_nt_response?)>
```

##### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits | Description  |
|--------------------------|-----------------|--|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | String<br>N/A   | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup  |
| API token<br><api_token> | String<br>N/A   | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

##### Optional connection object field

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits       | Description   |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------|---|
| status check<br><status_check> | Boolean<br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
|               |                 | <p><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required</p> |

### Independent Refund with Vault transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name              | Type and Limits   | Description   |
|----------------------------|---|---|
| data key<br><data_key>     | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alphanumeric<br><br><div> <b>NOTE:</b><br/>           Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>           &lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \         </div>   | Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier<br><br>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center  |
| order ID<br><order_id>     | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alphanumeric-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces   | Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.<br><br>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction. |
| amount<br><amount>         | <i>String</i><br><br>10-character decimal<br><br>Up to 7 digits (dollars) + decimal point (.) + 2 digits (cents) after the decimal point<br><br><div> <b>EXAMPLE:</b> 1234567.89         </div> | Transaction dollar amount<br><br>This must contain at least 3 digits, two of which are penny values<br><br>Minimum allowable value = \$0.01, maximum allowable value = \$9999999.99   |
| electronic commerce indic- | <i>String</i>   | Describes the category of e-commerce  |

| Variable Name        | Type and Limits          | Description  |
|----------------------|--------------------------|--|
| ator<br><crypt_type> | 1-character alphanumeric | <p>transaction being processed. Allowable values are:</p> <p>1 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Single</p> <p>2 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Recurring</p> <p>3 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Instalment</p> <p>4 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Unknown classification</p> <p>5 – Authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</p> <p>6 – Non-authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</p> <p>7 – SSL-enabled merchant</p> <p><b>In Credential on File transactions where the request field e-commerce indicator is also being sent:</b> the allowable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for <b>payment indicator</b>, as follows:</p> <p>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = U, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> |

### Independent Refund with Vault transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits                            | Description   |
|--------------------------|--|---|
| customer ID<br><cust_id> | <i>String</i><br>50-character alphanumeric | <p>Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier</p> <p>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center</p> |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits   | Description |
|---------------|---|-------------|
|               | <div> <b>NOTE:</b><br/>           Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>           &lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \         </div> |             |

#### 4.6.5 Force Post with Vault – res\_forcepost\_cc

This transaction uses the data key to identify a previously registered credit card profile in Vault. The details saved within the profile are then submitted to perform a Force Post transaction.

##### XML transaction object

<res\_forcepost\_cc>

##### Force Post with Vault transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT res_forcepost_cc (data_key, order_id, cust_id?, amount, crypt_type, auth_code, get_nt_response?)>
```

##### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits | Description  |
|--------------------------|-----------------|--|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | String<br>N/A   | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup  |
| API token<br><api_token> | String<br>N/A   | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

**Optional connection object field**

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits                  | Description   |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|---|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br><br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required </div> |

**Force Post with Vault transaction request fields – Required**

| Variable Name          | Type and Limits   | Description  |
|------------------------|---|--|
| data key<br><data_key> | <i>String</i><br><br>25-character alphanumeric                            | <p>Unique identifier for a Vault profile, and used in future Vault financial transactions to associate a transaction with that profile</p> <p>Data key is generated by Moneris and returned to you in the Receipt object when the profile is first registered</p>  |
| order ID<br><order_id> | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alphanumeric-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces | <p>Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.</p> <p>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction.</p> |
| amount<br><amount>     | <i>String</i><br><br>10-character decimal                                 | <p>Transaction dollar amount</p> <p>This must contain at least 3 digits, two</p>   |

| Variable Name                                     | Type and Limits   | Description   |
|---|---|---|
|   | Up to 7 digits (dollars) + decimal point (.) + 2 digits (cents) after the decimal point<br><br><div>EXAMPLE: 1234567.89</div> | of which are penny values<br><br>Minimum allowable value = \$0.01,<br>maximum allowable value = \$9999999.99  |
| electronic commerce indicator<br><br><crypt_type> | <i>String</i><br><br>1-character alphanumeric   | Describes the category of e-commerce transaction being processed. Allowable values are:<br><br>1 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Single<br><br>2 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Recurring<br><br>3 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Instalment<br><br>4 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Unknown classification<br><br>5 – Authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)<br><br>6 – Non-authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)<br><br>7 – SSL-enabled merchant<br><br><b>In Credential on File transactions where the request field e-commerce indicator is also being sent:</b> the allowable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for <b>payment indicator</b> , as follows:<br><br>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6<br><br>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6<br><br>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7<br><br>if payment indicator = U, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7<br><br>if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7 |

| Variable Name                     | Type and Limits                    | Description  |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|--|
| authorization code<br><auth_code> | String<br>8-character alphanumeric | An authorization code required to carry out a Force Post; provided in the transaction response from the issuing bank |

#### Force Post with Vault transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits   | Description  |
|--------------------------|---|--|
| customer ID<br><cust_id> | String<br>50-character alphanumeric<br><br><b>NOTE:</b><br>Some special characters are not allowed:<br>< > \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \ | Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier<br><br>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center |

#### 4.6.6 Card Verification with Vault – res\_card\_verification\_cc

This transaction uses the data key to identify a previously registered credit card profile in Vault. The details saved within the profile are then submitted to perform a Card Verification transaction.

The data key may be a temporary one generated used Hosted Tokenization, or may be a permanent one from the Vault.

#### XML transaction object

<res\_card\_verification\_cc>

#### Card Verification with Vault transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT res_card_verification_cc (data_key, order_id, crypt_type, avs_info?, cvd_info?, cof_info?, get_nt_response?)>
```

#### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits | Description  |
|--------------------------|-----------------|--|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | String<br>N/A   | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup    |
| API token<br><api_token> | String<br>N/A   | Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account |



| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
|               |                 | <p>activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

### Optional connection object field

| Variable Name                                   | Type and Limits                         | Description  |
|---|---|--|
| <p>status check</p> <p>&lt;status_check&gt;</p> | <p><i>Boolean</i></p> <p>true/false</p> | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required</p> </div> |

### Card Verification with Vault transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name                           | Type and Limits                                       | Description   |
|---|---|---|
| <p>data key</p> <p>&lt;data_key&gt;</p> | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>25-character alphanumeric</p> | <p>Unique identifier for a Vault profile, and used in future Vault financial transactions to associate a transaction with that profile</p> <p>Data key is generated by Moneris and returned to you in the Receipt object when the profile is first registered</p> |

| Variable Name                                 | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|---|--|--|
| order ID<br><order_id>                        | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alpha-<br>numerica-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @<br>spaces | <p>Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.</p> <p>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction.</p>   |
| electronic commerce indicator<br><crypt_type> | <i>String</i><br><br>1-character alphanumeric                                      | <p>Describes the category of e-commerce transaction being processed. Allowable values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Single</li> <li>2 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Recurring</li> <li>3 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Instalment</li> <li>4 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Unknown classification</li> <li>5 – Authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</li> <li>6 – Non-authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</li> <li>7 – SSL-enabled merchant</li> </ul> <p><b>In Credential on File transactions where the request field e-commerce indicator is also being sent:</b> the allowable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for <b>payment indicator</b>, as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</li> <li>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</li> <li>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</li> <li>if payment indicator = U, then allowable values</li> </ul> |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description  |
|---------------|-----------------|--|
|               |                 | for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7<br><br>if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7 |

### Card Verification with Vault transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name  | Type and Limits      | Description   |
|--|----------------------|---|
| AVS Information<br><avs_info><br><div>For information on request fields for this object, see xrefHere</div>                | <i>Object</i><br>N/A | Contains fields applying to the Address Verification Service (AVS) e-fraud tool                     |
| CVD Information<br><cvd_info><br><div>For information on request fields for this object, see xrefHere</div>                | <i>Object</i><br>N/A | Contains fields related to the Card Validation Digits e-fraud tool                                  |
| Credential on File Information<br><cof_info><br><div>For information on request fields for this object, see xrefHere</div> | <i>Object</i><br>N/A | Required when storing cardholder credentials or using these credentials in subsequent transactions. |

## 5 3-D Secure 2.2 Transactions

- 5.1 About 3-D Secure 2.2
- 5.2 Building Your 3-D Secure 2.2 Integration
- 5.3 Implementing Card Lookup Request
- 5.4 Implementing MPI 3DS Authentication Request
- 5.5 Handling the Challenge Flow
- 5.7 Performing the Authorization
- 5.8 Testing Your 3-D Secure 2.2 Integration
- 5.9 Moving to Production With 3-D Secure 2.2
- 5.10 3-D Secure 2.2 TransStatus Codes
- 5.11 3-D Secure 2.2 Commons TransStatusReason Decline Codes
- 5.12 CAVV Result Codes

### 5.1 About 3-D Secure 2.2

3-D Secure 2.2 is an EMVCo payment authentication protocol designed to reduce card not present fraud by making a risk assessment based on transaction and device data, while also supporting further risk minimization measures, such as a challenge to the cardholder. In some cases, a liability shift takes effect for certain card-not-present fraud-related chargebacks enabling the merchant to provide goods and services with confidence.

The Moneris Gateway can enable transactions using the 3-D Secure protocol via Moneris 3DS Server and Access Control Server (ACS).

Moneris Gateway supports the following 3-D Secure implementations:

- Visa Secure (please note: Visa Secure does not support all the RI Indicators available in the 3D Secure 2.2. Check the RI Indicators status field to confirm the status Visa Secure support.)
- Mastercard Identity Check
- American Express SafeKey (please note: American Express only supports authentication requests for merchants who have an Amex OFI merchant account)

### 5.1.1 3-D Secure Implementations

Visa Secure, Mastercard Identity Check and American Express SafeKey are programs based on the 3-D Secure Protocol to improve the security of online transactions.

These programs involve authentication of the cardholder during an online e-commerce transaction.

Authentication is based on the issuer's selected method of authentication.

The following are examples of authentication methods:

- Risk-based authentication
- Dynamic passwords
- Static passwords

Some benefits of these programs are reduced risk of fraudulent transactions and protection against chargebacks for certain fraudulent transactions.

The XML 3DS 2.2 API supports two message categories and two device channels from the 3-D Secure authentication protocol:

1. Message Categories:

- **Payment Authentication** – Cardholder authentication prior to an eCommerce transaction. After a successful 3DS authentication, you proceed with a purchase or pre-authorization.
- **Non-Payment Authentication (NPA)**– Identity verification and account confirmation performed without an accompanying financial transaction. After a successful 3DS authentication, you might proceed with:
  - Tokenizing the card for future payments
  - Allowing log-in for client portals
  - Any other activity relying on identity or account confirmation

2. Device Channels:

- **Browser** – The transaction originates from a website utilized via a browser on the cardholder's device.

- For example, an eCommerce transaction originating on the merchant's website with a check-out process that the cardholder is using via their personal computer or mobile phone's web browser (Chrome, Edge, Safari, etc.).
- **3DS Requestor Initiated** – Account confirmations and cardholder authentication with no direct cardholder originating the transaction.
  - 3RI can be used for authenticating Mail-Telephone Order (MOTO) transactions.
  - 3RI can be used to authenticate follow-on transactions as part of a subscription, such as recurring transactions. The first cardholder payment might use a browser-based authentication, with subsequent payments utilizing a 3RI authentication linking to the previous.
  - In situations where a merchant business model accommodates waiting before processing their payment, they can utilize Decoupled Authentication to allow the cardholder to authenticate directly with their issuer via a non-3DS challenge, such as a push notification to a banking app.

### 5.1.2 Out of Scope/Not Supported Check

- In-app

### 5.1.3 Version Compatibility

All development to the Moneris API must be able to support the addition of new fields in the response and new error conditions in the response. Otherwise any changes that affect backwards compatibility will be communicated by Moneris Solutions with an appropriate period of notice. When developing to the solution it is recommended to validate for success state of the request and then handle errors states separately and ensure there is a final catch for any unexpected/undocumented errors that are returned.

### 5.1.4 Upgrading from 3-D Secure 2.0 to 3-D Secure 2.2 Check

The 3DS 2.2 API is different from the 3DS 2.0 API therefore developers will have to complete the steps described in the section 5.2 Building Your 3-D Secure 2.2 Integration.

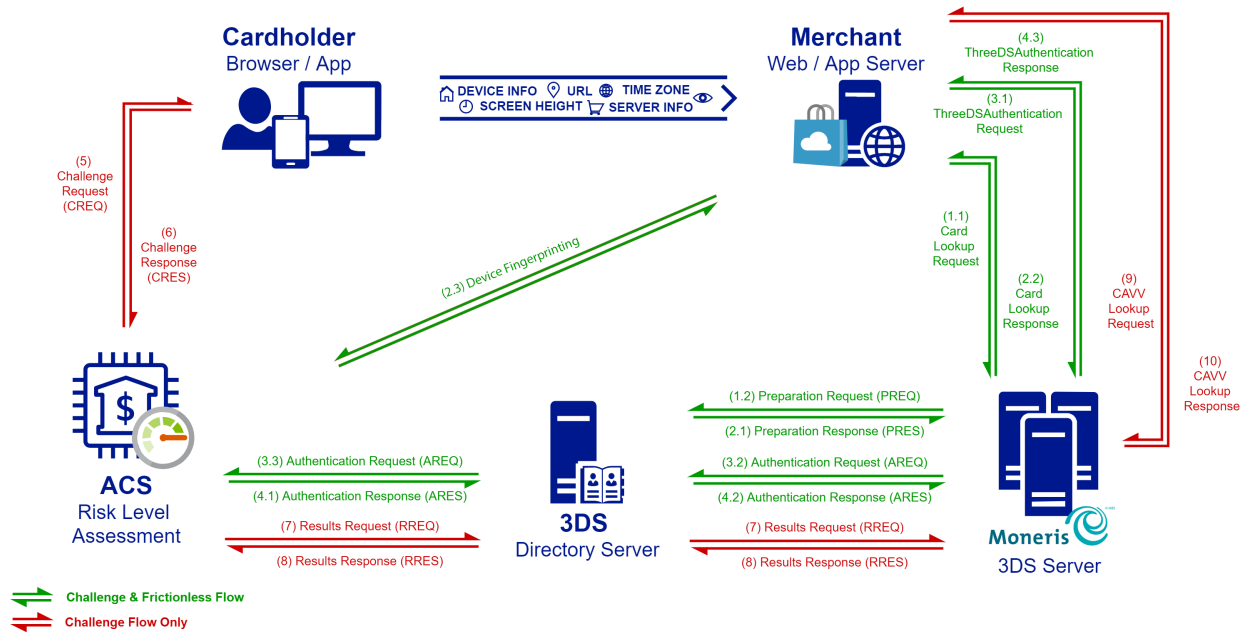
## 5.2 Building Your 3-D Secure 2.2 Integration

- 5.2.1 Activating 3-D Secure Functionality
- 5.2.2 Transaction Flow for 3-D Secure - Browser channel
- 5.2.3 Transaction Flow for 3-D Secure - 3RI channel

### 5.2.1 Activating 3-D Secure Functionality

To activate Visa Secure, Mastercard Identity Check and/or American Express SafeKey transaction functionality, call Moneris Sales Support at 1-855-465-4980 to have Moneris enroll you in the program(s) and enable the functionality on your account.

### 5.2.2 Transaction Flow for 3-D Secure - Browser channel



The 3DS 2.2 API is called when the customer wishes to checkout. An optional card lookup request can be performed to initiate cardholder browser fingerprinting. Once the fingerprint is complete, or as a first step if not performing a fingerprint, the transactional information can then be transmitted to the 3DS 2.2 service so a risk assessment may be initiated.

The flow can then proceed in one of two ways. The two different flows are referred to as “frictionless” and “challenge”.

The “frictionless” flow is invisible to a cardholder. If the issuing financial institution has enough information to make a risk assessment and assume liability, this will manifest itself as with an authentication attempt or success with an accompanying CAVV value. No cardholder challenge is presented.

In the “challenge” flow the issuing financial institution may wish to take a further step and issue a challenge to the cardholder. In this case the cardholder’s browser gets re-directed to the issuer’s 3DS platform for authentication. Once this challenge is complete, the cardholder browser is again re-directed back to the merchant’s site. The merchant’s server then issues a server-to-server request in order to obtain the CAVV value from Moneris.

### **Steps 1 – 2 (Optional)**

An optional card lookup request can be performed to initiate cardholder browser fingerprinting. The merchant website collects device information and provides them to Moneris via the `card_lookup` request (1.1). Moneris submits this data to the 3DS Directory Server and returns with the `card_lookup` response containing the card’s supported 3DS version, an ACS URL, and 3DS Method Data representing the fingerprint (2.2). The merchant browser then submits an HTTP POST to the ACS URL with the method data. (2.3)

Once the fingerprint is complete, or as a first step if not performing a fingerprint, the transactional information can then be transmitted to the 3DS 2.2 service so a risk assessment may be initiated.

### **Steps 3 – 4 (Required)**

The 3DS authentication request `threeDSAuthentication` is performed by the merchant website to initiate validating the cardholder identity. Moneris communicates with the 3DS Directory and the ACS system for that issuer to provide an initial risk assessment (3.2-4.2). Moneris returns a `threeDSAuthentication` response to the merchant with a `TransStatus` indicating the action for the website to perform:

- A `TransStatus` = “Y” or “A” means the website can proceed immediately to the financial transaction with the CAVV value provided. This is a frictionless transaction flow without presenting a challenge.
- A `TransStatus` = “C” indicates that the cardholder must be presented a challenge. To present the challenge, you must POST a `<form>` with a “creq” field, which contains the `ChallengeData`, to the URL defined in the `ChallengeURL` field.
- A `TransStatus` = “D” indicates that the cardholder must be presented a challenge via Decoupled Authentication. See Decoupled Authentication.

### **Steps 5 – 10 (Challenge Only)**

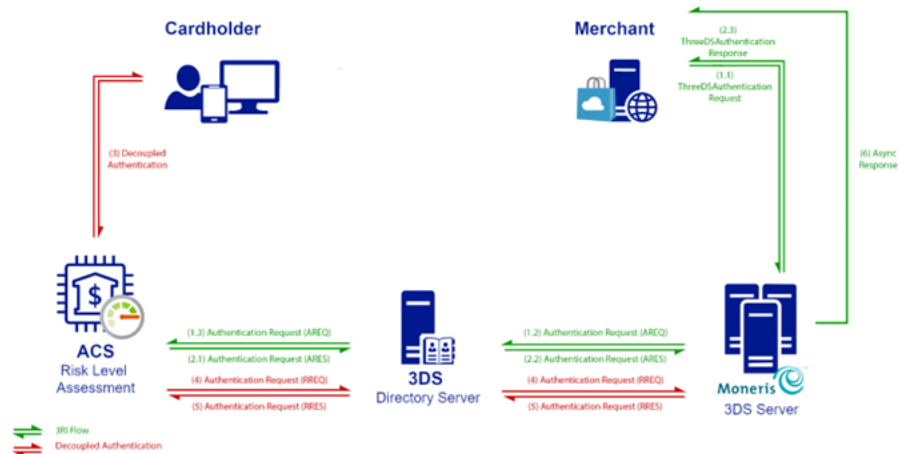
In scenarios where a challenge is required, the merchant website sends an HTTP POST to the Challenge URL with the `ChallengeData` sent as a “CREQ” value (5). The ACS system will present a challenge to the cardholder, who will supply whatever credentials their issuer requires. The merchant website receives a



“CRES” value from the ACS via the HTTP POST response (6). Meanwhile, the ACS supplies the results to the 3DS Directory, which then forwards it to Moneris (7-8).

The merchant’s website then sends a CAVV Lookup to Moneris via a cavv\_lookup request and includes their “CRES” (9). Moneris responses with the cavv\_lookup response with the necessary ECI and CAVV values. With the 3DS authentication complete, you can proceed to the financial transaction.

### 5.2.3 Transaction Flow for 3-D Secure - 3RI channel



In a 3DS Requestor Initiated flow, the cardholder is not directly triggering the transaction flow via a browser experience as above. It is possible they are initiating the transaction outside the 3DS protocol, such as mailing or phoning the merchant (Mail-Telephone Order, aka MOTO), or it is possible the merchant is processing a recurring or installment plan on behalf of the cardholder’s subscription. It is also possible the merchant requires a non-payment authentication as part of tokenizing the card for later use.

3RI flows do not have direct cardholder interaction. The merchant sends their <threeDSAuthentication> request per steps 3-4 above but include additional fields to describe their 3RI usage scenario.

- If this is a Mail or Telephone (MOTO) payment authentication, the ACS may trigger a Decoupled Authentication between the issuer and cardholder (see Decoupled Authentication)
- If this is a follow-on payment from a previous 3DS authenticated transaction, you can include prior\_request\_auth\_info to link to the previous authentication and improve the likelihood of a successful result

Your server can utilize the fields device\_channel , ri\_indicator and message\_category to inform Moneris if your merchant server is attempting to use the 3DS Requestor Initiated process.

### 5.2.3.1 Decoupled Authentication

For scenarios where a 3RI authentication requires challenge, instead of utilizing the standard challenge request and response the ACS authenticates the cardholder outside of the 3-D Secure protocol such as a banking app or mobile phone text to the cardholder. The Moneris 3DS Server waits for the ACS to authenticate the cardholder; this authentication can take up to 7 days. As this process relies on a cardholder action outside the 3DS flow, it occurs asynchronously to transaction processing.

Your server can utilize the fields `decoupled_request_indicator` and `decoupled_request_async_url` to inform Moneris that you are opting in to accept a Decoupled Authentication attempt and where you want Moneris to POST the results asynchronously.

### 5.2.4 Mpi2Request Object and 3-D Secure Authentication

The authentication transactions for 3-D Secure 2.2 transactions are represented as part of the **Mpi2Request** object.

There are three transactions that are sent under Mpi2Request:

- Card Lookup Request
- MPI 3DS Authentication Request - Browser Channel
- Cavv Lookup Request

Once authentication is complete, Purchase with 3-D Secure – `cavv_purchase` or Pre-Authorization with 3-D Secure – `cavv_preauth` are performed subsequently for authorization.

### 5.2.5 3-D Secure 2.2 Request DTD

```
<!ELEMENT Mpi2Request (store_id, api_token, (card_lookup | threeds_authentication | cavv_
lookup))>

<!ELEMENT card_lookup (order_id, (data_key | pan), notification_url)>

//Browser Channel only
<!ELEMENT threeds_authentication (message_category, device_channel, request_type, order_id,
(pan | data_key, expdate), amount, currency?, cardholder_name, threeds_completion_ind, bill_
address1, bill_province, bill_city, bill_postal_code, bill_country, ship_address1, ship_
province, ship_city, ship_postal_code, ship_country, notification_url, challenge_windowsize,
browser_useragent, browser_java_enabled, browser_screen_height, browser_screenwidth, browser_
language, email?, request_challenge?)>

//3RI, non-recurring
<!ELEMENT threeds_authentication (message_category, device_channel, decoupled_request_
indicator?, decoupled_request_max_time?, decoupled_request_async_url?, ri_indicator, prior_
authentication_info?, order_id, (pan | data_key, expdate), amount, currency?, cardholder_
```

```
name), bill_address1, bill_province, bill_city, bill_postal_code, bill_country, ship_
address1, ship_province, ship_city, ship_postal_code, ship_country,>

//3RI, recurring
<!ELEMENT threads_authentication (message_category, device_channel, decoupled_request_
indicator?, decoupled_request_max_time?, decoupled_request_async_url?, recurring_frequency,
recurring_expiry, ri_indicator, prior_authentication_info, order_id, (pan | data_key,
expdate), amount, currency?, cardholder_name), bill_address1, bill_province, bill_city, bill_
postal_code, bill_country, ship_address1, ship_province, ship_city, ship_postal_code, ship_
country,>

<!ELEMENT prior_authentication_info (prior_request_auth_data, prior_request_ref, prior_
request_auth_method>)

<!ELEMENT cavv_lookup (cres)>

<!-- start 3DS 2.2 specific fields -->
<!ELEMENT threads_version (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT threads_server_trans_id (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT data_key (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT notification_url (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT cardholder_name (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT currency (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT threads_completion_ind (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT request_type (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT purchase_date (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT challenge_window_size (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT bill_address1 (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT bill_province (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT bill_city (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT bill_postal_code (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT bill_country (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ship_address1 (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ship_province (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ship_city (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ship_postal_code (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ship_country (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT browser_useragent (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT browser_java_enabled (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT browser_screen_height (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT browser_screen_width (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT browser_language (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT request_challenge (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT cres (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT message_category (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT device_channel (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT decoupled_request_indicator (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT decoupled_request_max_time (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT decoupled_request_async_url (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT recurring_frequency (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT recurring_expiry (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ri_indicator (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT prior_request_auth_data (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT prior_request_ref (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT prior_request_auth_method (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT prior_request_auth_timestamp (#PCDATA)>
```

## 5.2.6 3-D Secure 2.2 Response DTD

```
<!-- The following are only applicable to 3DS 2.2 transactions -->
<!ELEMENT MessageType (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ThreeDSResponseCode (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ThreeDSMessage (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ReceiptID (#PCDATA)>
```

```

<!ELEMENT ThreeDSMethodURL (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ThreeDSMethodData (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ChallengeURL (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ChallengeData (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ChallengeCompletionIndicator (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT TransStatus (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ThreeDSSTransID (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ECI (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT Cavv (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ThreeDSVersion (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT DTransID (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT TransStatusReason (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT Cardholder Info (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT AuthenticationType (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ThreeDSAcTransID (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ThreeDSAuthTimeStamp (#PCDATA)>

```

## 5.3 Implementing Card Lookup Request

The CardLookup request verifies the applicability of 3DS 2.2 on the card and returns the 3DS Method URL used for device fingerprinting if the card supports this feature. This request is optional, it may increase the chance of a frictionless flow.

The threeDSMethodURL & threeDSMethodData are returned to the merchant server on the CardLookup response, if supported.

- If you receive the threeDSMethodURL, you may send the threeDSMethodData to the threeDSMethodURL via a browser post in order to supplement the authentication request with device data pertaining to the cardholder's browser.
- If you do not receive the threeDSMethodURL, you may still proceed with 3DS Authentication.

The threeDSMethodData must be sent via HTTP POST to the threeDSMethodURL in a hidden iFrame.

In your implementation, use the following URLs as Host, depending on the development stage:

Testing:

esqa.moneris.com

Production:

www3.moneris.com

### 5.3.1 Card Lookup Request

#### XML transaction object

```
<card_lookup>
```

**TransactionTopicName transaction object definition**

```
<!ELEMENT card_lookup (order_id, (data_key | pan), notification_url)>
```

**Core connection object fields (all API transactions)**

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits      | Description  |
|--------------------------|----------------------|--|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | <i>String</i><br>N/A | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup  |
| API token<br><api_token> | <i>String</i><br>N/A | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

**Optional connection object field**

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits              | Description  |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required</p> </div> |

## Cavv Lookup Request transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|---|--|---|
| order ID<br><order_id>  | <i>String</i><br>50-character alphanumeric<br>a-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces | Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.<br><br>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction. |
| credit card number<br><pan>   | <i>String</i><br>max 20-character alphanumeric                             | Credit card number, usually 16 digits —field can be maximum 20 digits in support of future expansion of card number ranges.<br><br>Carries the token for network tokenization transactions.   |
| <div> <b>NOTE:</b> Conditional.<br/>Either a credit card number or data key is required. </div> |  |   |
| data key<br><data_key>  | <i>String</i><br>25-character alphanumeric                                 | Unique identifier for a Vault profile, and used in future Vault financial transactions to associate a transaction with that profile<br><br>Data key is generated by Moneris and returned to you in the Receipt object when the profile is first registered  |
| <div> <b>NOTE:</b> Conditional.<br/>Either a credit card number or data key is required. </div> |  |   |

| Variable Name      | Type and Limits             | Description  |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|--|
| notification URL   | <i>String</i>               | Notification URL for receiving the 3DS Method POST response from the issuer ACS. |
| <notification_url> | 256-character alpha-numeric |  |

## 5.4 Implementing MPI 3DS Authentication Request

The MPI 3DS Authentication Request is used to start the validation process of the card. The result of this request determines whether 3DS 2.2 is supported by the card and what type of authentication is required.

In your implementation, use the following URLs as Host, depending on the development stage:

### Testing URLs:

<https://mpg1t.moneris.io/mpi2/servlet/MpiServlet>

### Production URLs:

<https://mpg1.moneris.io/mpi2/servlet/MpiServlet>

Below we detail three different scenarios for utilizing Moneris MPI 3DS Authentication. Each scenario has conditions for which fields are required or optional for the endpoint.

### 5.4.1 MPI 3DS Authentication Request - Browser Channel

**NOTE:** Billing address request fields are recommended to be sent for this transaction, or else the authentication process may fail

### XML transaction object

```
<threads_authentication>
```

### MPI 3DS Authentication Request transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT threads_authentication (message_category, device_channel, request_type, order_id, (pan | data_key, expdate), amount, currency?, cardholder_name, threads_completion_ind, bill_address1, bill_province, bill_city, bill_postal_code, bill_country, ship_address1, ship_province, ship_city, ship_postal_code,
```

```
ship_country, notification_url, challenge_window_size, browser_useragent,
browser_java_enabled, browser_screen_height, browser_screenwidth, browser_
language, email?, request_challenge?)>
```

**WARNING:** Do not send fields related to 3RI on browser-based authentications.

### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits      | Description  |
|--------------------------|----------------------|--|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | <i>String</i><br>N/A | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup  |
| API token<br><api_token> | <i>String</i><br>N/A | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

### Optional connection object field

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits              | Description  |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request</p> </div> |



| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
|               |                 | times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required |

### MPI 3DS Authentication Request transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name                          | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|--|--|---|
| message category<br><message_category> | <i>String</i><br>2-character numeric                                       | Whether the authentication request is for a payment or non-payment use:<br><br>01 = payment authentication (PA)<br><br>02 = non-payment authentication (NPA)  |
| device channel<br><device_channel>     | <i>String</i><br>2-character numeric                                       | The interface used to initiate the authentication:<br><br>02 = Browser (BRW)<br><br>03 = 3DS Requestor Initiated (3RI)  |
| request type<br><request_type>         | <i>String</i><br>2-character alphanumeric                                  | Indicates the type of browser-based authentication request:<br><br>01 = cardholder initiated payment<br><br>02 = recurring transaction<br><br>Conditional. Required if device_channel = 02  |
| order ID<br><order_id>                 | <i>String</i><br>50-character alphanumeric<br>a-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces | Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.<br><br>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction. |

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits   | Description   |
|---|---|---|
| data key<br><data_key><br>OR<br>credit card number<br><pan> | <i>String</i><br><br>data key limits:<br><br>25-character alphanumeric<br><br>credit card number limits:<br><br>max 20-character alphanumeric   | <b>data key description:</b><br><br>Unique identifier for a Vault profile, and used in future Vault financial transactions to associate a transaction with that profile<br><br>Data key is generated by Moneris and returned to you in the Receipt object when the profile is first registered<br><br><b>credit card number description:</b><br><br>Credit card number, usually 16 digits —field can be maximum 20 digits in support of future expansion of card number ranges.<br><br>Carries the token for network tokenization transactions. |
| expiry date<br><expdate>                                    | <i>String</i><br><br>4-character alphanumeric<br><br>YYYYMM   | Expiry date of the credit card, in YYYYMM format.<br><br><div> <b>NOTE:</b> This is the reverse of the MMY Y date format that is presented on the card. </div>  |
| amount<br><amount>  | <i>String</i><br><br>10-character decimal<br><br>Up to 7 digits (dollars) + decimal point (.) + 2 digits (cents) after the decimal point<br><br><div> <b>EXAMPLE:</b> 1234567.89 </div> | Transaction dollar amount<br><br>This must contain at least 3 digits, two of which are penny values<br><br>Minimum allowable value = \$0.01, maximum allowable value = \$9999999.99   |
| cardholder name<br><cardholder_name>                        | <i>String</i><br><br>45-character alphanumeric<br><br><div> <b>NOTE:</b> Accented characters </div>   | Name of the cardholder  |

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits                            | Description  |
|---|--|--|
|   | are not allowable                          |  |
| 3DS completion indicator<br><three_ds_completion_ind> | <i>String</i><br>1-character alphabetic    | indicates whether 3ds method<br>MpiCardLookup was successfully completed<br><br>Allowable values:<br><br>Y = Successfully completed<br><br>N = Did not successfully complete<br><br>U = Unavailable<br><br>Conditional. Required if card_lookup is used. |
| billing address<br><bill_address1>                    | <i>String</i><br>50-character alphanumeric | Cardholder billing address   |
| billing province<br><bill_province>                   | <i>String</i><br>3-character alphanumeric  | Cardholder province or state<br><br>Defined in country subdivision ISO 3166-2  |
| billing city<br><bill_city>                           | <i>String</i><br>50-character alphanumeric | Cardholder billing city  |
| billing postal code<br><bill_postal_code>             | <i>String</i><br>16-character alphanumeric | Cardholder billing postal code   |
| billing country<br><bill_country>                     | <i>String</i><br>3-character alphanumeric  | Cardholder billing country<br><br>Defined as 3 digit country code ISO 3166-1   |
| shipping address<br><ship_address1>                   | <i>String</i><br>50-character alphanumeric | Shipping destination address   |
| shipping province<br><ship_province>                  | <i>String</i><br>3-character alphanumeric  | Shipping destination province or state<br><br>Defined in country subdivision ISO 3166-2  |

| Variable Name                                  | Type and Limits                              | Description  |
|--|--|--|
| shipping city<br><ship_city>                   | <i>String</i><br>50-character alphanumeric   | Shipping destination city  |
| shipping postal code<br><ship_postal_code>     | <i>String</i><br>16-character alphanumeric   | Shipping destination postal or ZIP code  |
| shipping country<br><ship_country>             | <i>String</i><br>3-character alphanumeric    | Shipping destination country<br>Defined as 3-digit country code in ISO 3166-1  |
| notification URL<br><notification_url>         | <i>String</i><br>256-character alphanumeric  | Notification URL for receiving the 3DS Method POST response from the issuer ACS.<br><br>Conditional. Required if device_channel = 02   |
| challenge window size<br><challengeWindowSize> | <i>String</i><br>2-character alphanumeric    | Relates to the rendering of the ACS challenge within the browser.<br><br>Allowable values:<br><br>01 = 250 x 400<br>02 = 390 x 400<br>03 = 500 x 600<br>04 = 600 x 400<br>05 = Full screen<br><br>Conditional. Required if device_channel = 02 |
| browser user agent<br><browser_user_agent>     | <i>String</i><br>2048-character alphanumeric | Browser User Agent<br><br>Conditional. Required if device_channel = 02   |
| browser java enabled<br><browser_java_enabled> | <i>String</i><br>1-character alphabetic      | Indicates whether Java is enabled in the browser<br><br>Allowable values:<br><br>T = True  |

| Variable Name                                    | Type and Limits                          | Description   |
|--|--|---|
|  |  | F = False<br><br>Conditional. Required if device_channel = 02   |
| browser screen height<br><browser_screen_height> | String<br><br>6-character numeric        | Pixel height of cardholder screen<br><br>Conditional. Required if device_channel = 02   |
| browser screen width<br><browser_screen_width>   | String<br><br>6-character numeric        | Pixel width of cardholder screen<br><br>Conditional. Required if device_channel = 02  |
| browser language<br><browser_language>           | String<br><br>8-character alphanumeric   | As defined in IETF BCP47<br><br>Conditional. Required if device_channel = 02  |
| email<br><email>                                 | String<br><br>254-character alphanumeric | Cardholder email address<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> This field is not mandatory, but it is required. It is highly recommended to provide the cardholder's email address. Lack of providing the cardholder's address, might increase the risk of rejects. |

### MPI 3DS Authentication Request transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits                   | Description  |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| currency<br><currency>         | String<br><br>3-character numeric | ISO 4217 3 digit currency code<br><br>CAD = 124<br><br>USD = 840<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> This field should not be sent unless Multi Currency Pricing is enabled on your merchant account |
| request challenge<br><request_ | String<br><br>2-character numeric | Indicates whether a browser-based challenge is requested for this transaction. Standard is "01"  |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description  |
|---------------|-----------------|--|
| challenge>    |                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 01 = No preference</li> <li>• 02 = No challenge requested</li> <li>• 03 = Challenge requested: 3DS Requestor Preference</li> <li>• 04 = Challenge requested: Mandate</li> </ul> <p>Conditional. Required if device_channel = 02</p> |

### Sample MPI 3DS Authentication Request - Browser Channel

```

<Mpi2Request>
<store_id>store5</store_id>
<api_token>yesguy<api_token>
<threeds_authentication>
  <message_category>01</message_category>
  <device_channel>02</device_channel>
  <order_id>test authentication 2</order_id>
  <pan>4000#####0013</pan>
  <expdate>2105</expdate>
  <amount>1.00</amount>
  <threeds_completion_ind>Y</threeds_completion_ind>
  <request_type>01</request_type>
  <notification_url>https://merchant.example..com/notify.html</notification_url>
  <challenge_window_size>03</challenge_window_size>
  <cardholder_name>John Smith</cardholder_name>
  <bill_address1>1 Main St</bill_address1>
  <bill_province>ON</bill_province>
  <bill_city>Toronto</bill_city>
  <bill_postal_code>M8X 2X2</bill_postal_code>
  <bill_country>124</bill_country>
  <ship_address1>1 Main St</ship_address1>
  <ship_province>ON</ship_province>
  <ship_city>Toronto</ship_city>
  <ship_postal_code>M1M1M1</ship_postal_code>
  <ship_country>124</ship_country>
  <browser_useragent>Mozilla/5.0 (Windows NT 10.0.....</browser_useragent>
  <browser_java_enabled>true</browser_java_enabled>

```

```
<browser_screen_height>1000</browser_screen_height>
<browser_screen_width>1920</browser_screen_width>
<browser_language>en-GB</browser_language>
<email>user@example.com</email>
<request_challenge>01</request_challenge>
</threeds_authentication>
</Mpi2Response>
```

### Sample MPI 3DS Authentication Response - Frictionless (without Challenge)

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<Mpi2Response>
  <receipt>
    <MessageType>ARes</MessageType>
    <ResponseCode>001</ResponseCode>
    <Message>SUCCESS</Message>
    <ReceiptId>danlookup100666</ReceiptId>
    <ThreeDSMethodURL></ThreeDSMethodURL>
    <ThreeDSMethodData></ThreeDSMethodData>
    <ChallengeURL></ChallengeURL>
    <ChallengeData></ChallengeData>
    <TransStatus>Y</TransStatus>
    <ThreeDSServerTransId>b166120b-09d1-4b82-a343-a235e1ad6980</ThreeDSServerTransId>
    <DSTransId>aa5a81e5-4fe0-41e5-9e36-4b0187c4524e</DSTransId>
    <ECI>5</ECI>
    <Cavv>kAABApFSYyd4l2eQQFJjAAAAAA=</Cavv>
    <TransStatusReason></TransStatusReason>
    <CardholderInfo></CardholderInfo>
    <ThreeDSVersion>2.2</ThreeDSVersion>
    <AuthenticationType></AuthenticationType>
    <ThreeDSAcTransID>da49dc91-2f94-4c4a-bcaa-9700b9d7b205</ThreeDSAcTransID>
    <ThreeDSAuthTimeStamp>201710282113</ThreeDSAuthTimeStamp>
  </receipt>
</Mpi2Response>
```

### Sample MPI 3DS Authentication Response - with Challenge

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<Mpi2Response>
  <receipt>
    <MessageType>ARes</MessageType>
    <ResponseCode>001</ResponseCode>
    <Message>SUCCESS</Message>
```

```

    <ReceiptId>danlookup100666</ReceiptId>
    <ThreeDSMethodURL></ThreeDSMethodURL>
    <ThreeDSMethodData></ThreeDSMethodData>
    <ChallengeURL>https://acs-server.ps.msignia.com/api/v1/browser_challenges</ChallengeURL>
    <ChallengeData>eyJhY3NUcmFu...</ChallengeData>
    <TransStatus>C</TransStatus>
    <ThreeDSSTransId>07834e85-f422-4565-ae02-a6a7dc1b3e84</ThreeDSSTransId>
    <DSTransId>6330bf76-c7b2-4174-b291-20a6650d0b0f</DSTransId>
    <ECI></ECI>
    <Cavv></Cavv>
    <TransStatusReason></TransStatusReason>
    <CardholderInfo></CardholderInfo>
    <ThreeDSVersion>2.2</ThreeDSVersion>
    <AuthenticationType>01</AuthenticationType>
    <ThreeDSAcSTransID>da49dc91-2f94-4c4a-bcaa-9700b9d7b205</ThreeDSAcSTransID>
    <ThreeDSAuthTimeStamp></ThreeDSAuthTimeStamp>
  </receipt>
</Mpi2Response>

```

### 5.4.2 MPI 3DS Authentication Request - 3RI with recurring

**NOTE:** Billing address request fields are recommended to be sent for this transaction, or else the authentication process may fail

#### XML transaction object

```
<threeds_authentication>
```

#### MPI 3DS Authentication Request transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT threeds_authentication (message_category, device_channel, decoupled_request_indicator?, decoupled_request_max_time?, decoupled_request_async_url?, recurring_frequency, recurring_expiry, ri_indicator, prior_authentication_info, order_id, (pan | data_key, expdate), amount, currency?, cardholder_name), bill_address1, bill_province, bill_city, bill_postal_code, bill_country, ship_address1, ship_province, ship_city, ship_postal_code, ship_country)>
```

```
<!ELEMENT prior_authentication_info (prior_request_auth_data, prior_request_ref, prior_request_auth_method, prior_request_auth_timestamp)>
```



**Core connection object fields (all API transactions)**

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits      | Description  |
|--------------------------|----------------------|--|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | <i>String</i><br>N/A | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup  |
| API token<br><api_token> | <i>String</i><br>N/A | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

**Optional connection object field**

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits              | Description  |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required</p> </div> |

**MPI 3DS Authentication Request transaction request fields – Required**

| Variable Name                                | Type and Limits                      | Description  |
|--|--------------------------------------|--|
| message category<br><message_category>       | <i>String</i><br>2-character numeric | Whether the authentication request is for a payment or non-payment use:<br><br>01 = payment authentication (PA)<br><br>02 = non-payment authentication (NPA)   |
| device channel<br><device_channel>           | <i>String</i><br>2-character numeric | The interface used to initiate the authentication:<br><br>02 = Browser (BRW)<br><br>03 = 3DS Requestor Initiated (3RI)   |
| recurring frequency<br><recurring_frequency> | <i>String</i><br>4-character numeric | The minimum number of days between recurring transactions. Numeric values between 1 and 9999, leading zeroes accepted.<br><br>Conditional.<br>Required if request_type = 02<br><br>Conditional.<br>Required if ri_indicator = 01 |
| recurring expiry                             | <i>String</i>                        | End date after   |

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits                      | Description  |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--|
| <recurring_expiry>             | 8-character numeric                  | <p>which no further recurring transactions shall be performed.<br/>Format is YYYYMMDD.</p> <p>Conditional.<br/>Required if ri_indicator = 01</p>   |
| ri indicator<br><ri_indicator> | <i>String</i><br>2-character numeric | <p>The type of 3DS Requestor Initiated (3RI) request:</p> <p>01 = Recurring</p> <p>02 = Installment</p> <p>03 = Add Card</p> <p>04 = Maintain Card Information</p> <p>05 = Account verification</p> <p>06 = Split/Delayed Shipment</p> <p>07 = Top-up</p> <p>08 = Mail Order</p> <p>09 = Telephone Order</p> <p>10 = Whitelist</p> <p>11 = Other Payment</p> <p>Conditional.<br/>Required if device_channel = 03</p> |

**NOTE:** Visa Secure only support ri\_Indicator = 6 or 11 for Payment Transaction and ri Indicator = 3, 4, 5 and 10 for Non Payment Transaction

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits   | Description   |
|---|---|---|
| order ID<br><order_id>                                      | <i>String</i><br>50-character alphanumeric<br>a-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces  | Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.<br><br>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction. |
| data key<br><data_key><br>OR<br>credit card number<br><pan> | <i>String</i><br>data key limits:<br>25-character alphanumeric<br>credit card number limits:<br>max 20-character alphanumeric | <b>data key description:</b><br><br>Unique identifier for a Vault profile, and used in future Vault financial transactions to associate a transaction with that profile<br><br>Data key is generated by Moneris and returned to you in the Receipt object when the profile is first registered  |

| Variable Name                        | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|--------------------------------------|--|--|
|                                      |  | <p><b>credit card number description:</b></p> <p>Credit card number, usually 16 digits —field can be maximum 20 digits in support of future expansion of card number ranges.</p> <p>Carries the token for network tokenization transactions.</p> |
| expiry date<br><expdate>             | <i>String</i><br><br>4-character alphanumeric<br><br>YYMM  | Expiry date of the credit card, in YYMM format. <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This is the reverse of the MMY Y date format that is presented on the card.</p> </div>   |
| amount<br><amount>                   | <i>String</i><br><br>10-character decimal<br><br>Up to 7 digits (dollars) + decimal point (.) + 2 digits (cents) after the decimal point<br><br><div> <p><b>EXAMPLE:</b> 1234567.89</p> </div> | Transaction dollar amount<br><br>This must contain at least 3 digits, two of which are penny values<br><br>Minimum allowable value = \$0.01, maximum allowable value = \$99999999.99   |
| cardholder name<br><cardholder_name> | <i>String</i>  | Name of the cardholder   |

| Variable Name                             | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|---|--|---|
|   | 45-character alphanumeric                              |   |
|   | <div>NOTE: Accented characters are not allowable</div> |   |
| billing address<br><bill_address1>        | String<br>50-character alphanumeric                    | Cardholder billing address  |
| billing province<br><bill_province>       | String<br>3-character alphanumeric                     | Cardholder province or state<br><br>Defined in country subdivision ISO 3166-2           |
| billing city<br><bill_city>               | String<br>50-character alphanumeric                    | Cardholder billing city   |
| billing postal code<br><bill_postal_code> | String<br>16-character alphanumeric                    | Cardholder billing postal code  |
| billing country<br><bill_country>         | String<br>3-character alphanumeric                     | Cardholder billing country<br><br>Defined as 3 digit country code ISO 3166-1            |
| shipping address<br><ship_address1>       | String<br>50-character alphanumeric                    | Shipping destination address  |
| shipping province<br><ship_province>      | String<br>3-character alphanumeric                     | Shipping destination province or state<br><br>Defined in country subdivision ISO 3166-2 |
| shipping city<br><ship_city>              | String<br>50-character alphanumeric                    | Shipping destination city   |

| Variable Name                              | Type and Limits                             | Description   |
|--|---|---|
| shipping postal code<br><ship_postal_code> | <i>String</i><br>16-character alphanumeric  | Shipping destination postal or ZIP code   |
| shipping country<br><ship_country>         | <i>String</i><br>3-character alphanumeric   | Shipping destination country<br><br>Defined as 3-digit country code in ISO 3166-1   |
| email<br><email>                           | <i>String</i><br>254-character alphanumeric | Cardholder email address<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> This field is not mandatory, but it is required. It is highly recommended to provide the cardholder's email address. Lack of providing the cardholder's address, might increase the risk of rejects. |

### MPI 3DS Authentication Request transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name               | Type and Limits                         | Description  |
|-----------------------------|---|--|
| currency<br><currency>      | <i>String</i><br>3-character numeric    | ISO 4217 3 digit currency code<br><br>CAD = 124<br><br>USD = 840<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> This field should not be sent unless Multi Currency Pricing is enabled on your merchant account |
| decoupled request indicator | <i>String</i><br>1-character alphabetic | Whether the request utilizes Decoupled Authentication or not, if the ACS confirms its use.   |

| Variable Name  | Type and Limits                             | Description  |
|--|---|--|
| <decoupled_request_indicator>                                |   | <p>Y = Decoupled Authentication is supported and preferred if challenge is necessary</p> <p>N = Do not use Decoupled Authentication (Default)</p> <p>Defaults to N if unused.</p>  |
| decoupled request max time<br><decoupled_request_max_time>   | <i>String</i><br>5-character numeric        | <p>The maximum minutes that Moneris waits for an ACS to provide results.</p> <p>Numeric values between 1 and 10080. The max is equivalent to 7 days.</p> <p>Conditional. Required if device_channel = 03 and decoupled_request_indicator = Y</p>   |
| decoupled request async URL<br><decoupled_request_async_url> | <i>String</i><br>256-character alphanumeric | <p>Your URL where Moneris will POST the response back from ACS. Moneris re-attempts 3 times to POST the response.</p> <p>Conditional. Only sent if decoupled_request_indicator = Y</p>   |
| prior request auth info<br><prior_request_auth_info>         | <i>Object</i><br>N/A                        | <p>Object containing details for a prior 3DS authentication for this series of transactions. This is a nested object within the authentication transaction, and required when storing or using the information about the prior authentication for that card. For information about fields in the Prior Authentication Info object, see MPI 3DS Prior Authentication Info Object and Variables.</p> |

### MPI 3DS Prior Authentication Info

| Variable Name  | Type and Limits                            | Description  |
|--|--|--|
| prior request auth data<br><prior_request_auth_data> | <i>String</i><br>36-character alphanumeric | <p>Refers to the DSTransID in the response of the previous 3DS authentication.</p> |



| Variable Name  | Type and Limits                            | Description   |
|--|--|---|
| prior request ref<br><prior_request_auth_ref>                  | <i>String</i><br>36-character alphanumeric | Refers to the 3DS ACS Transaction ID in the response of the previous 3DS authentication.  |
| prior request auth method<br><prior_request_auth_method>       | <i>String</i><br>2-character numeric       | Mechanism used by the cardholder to authenticate in the previous 3DS authentication:<br><br>01 = Frictionless authentication<br><br>02 = Challenge authentication<br><br>03 = AVS verified<br><br>04 = Other issuer methods |
| prior request auth timestamp<br><prior_request_auth_timestamp> | <i>String</i><br>12-character numeric      | Date and time in UTC of the prior cardholder authentication. Found in the previous 3DS authentication response as 3DS Auth TimeStamp.<br><br>Format is YYYYMMDDHHMM.  |

### Sample MPI 3DS Authentication Request - 3RI with recurring

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<Mpi2Request>
  <store_id>store5</store_id>
  <api_token>yesguy</api_token>
  <threeds_authentication>
    <message_category>01</message_category>
    <device_channel>03</device_channel>
    <decoupled_request_max_time>10080</decoupled_request_max_time>
    <decoupled_request_indicator>Y</decoupled_request_indicator>
    <decoupled_request_async_url>my.server.com</decoupled_request_async_url>
    <ri_indicator>01</ri_indicator>
    <prior_authentication_info>
      <prior_request_ref>d7c1ee99-9478-44a6-blf2-391e29c6b340</prior_request_ref>
      <prior_request_auth_data>abcdabdc...</prior_request_auth_data>
      <prior_request_auth_method>01</prior_request_auth_method>
      <prior_request_auth_timestamp>201710282113</prior_request_auth_timestamp>
    </prior_authentication_info>
    <order_id>danlookup100666</order_id>
  </threeds_authentication>
</Mpi2Request>
```

```
<cardholder_name>John Smith</cardholder_name>
<pan>4606633870436092</pan>
<expdate>2105</expdate>
<amount>1.00</amount>
<threads_completion_ind>Y</threads_completion_ind>
<request_type>02</request_type>
<recurring_frequency>31</recurring_frequency>
<recurring_expiry>20231231</recurring_expiry>
</threads_authentication>
</Mpi2Request>
```

### Sample MPI 3DS Authentication Response

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<Mpi2Response>
  <receipt>
    <MessageType>ARes</MessageType>
    <ResponseCode>001</ResponseCode>
    <Message>SUCCESS</Message>
    <ReceiptId>danlookup1006663333333333</ReceiptId>
    <ThreeDSMethodURL></ThreeDSMethodURL>
    <ThreeDSMethodData></ThreeDSMethodData>
    <ChallengeURL></ChallengeURL>
    <ChallengeData></ChallengeData>
    <TransStatus>Y</TransStatus>
    <ThreeDSServerTransId>a3aa9295-7ce0-4856-a969-4951bb4b9310
    </ThreeDSServerTransId>
    <DSTransId>88632ac9-5873-4cf2-9637-b9cd8006e359</DSTransId>
    <ECI>5</ECI>
    <Cavv>kAABApFSYyd4l2eQQFJjAAAAAA=</Cavv>
    <TransStatusReason></TransStatusReason>
    <CardholderInfo></CardholderInfo>
    <ThreeDSVersion></ThreeDSVersion>
    <AuthenticationType>04</AuthenticationType>
    <ThreeDSAcTransID>da49dc91-2f94-4c4a-bcaa-9700b9d7b205</ThreeDSAcTransID>
    <ThreeDSAuthTimeStamp>201710282113</ThreeDSAuthTimeStamp>
  </receipt>
</Mpi2Response>
```

### 5.4.3 MPI 3DS Authentication Request - 3RI, non-recurring

**NOTE:** Billing address request fields are recommended to be sent for this transaction, or else the authentication process may fail

#### XML transaction object

```
<threads_authentication>
```

#### MPI 3DS Authentication Request transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT threads_authentication (message_category, device_channel, decoupled_request_indicator?, decoupled_request_max_time?, decoupled_request_async_url?, ri_indicator, prior_authentication_info?, order_id, (pan | data_key, expdate), amount, currency?, cardholder_name), bill_address1, bill_province, bill_city, bill_postal_code, bill_country, ship_address1, ship_province, ship_city, ship_postal_code, ship_country>
```

```
<!ELEMENT prior_authentication_info (prior_request_auth_data, prior_request_ref, prior_request_auth_method>
```

**WARNING:** Do not send fields related to 3RI on browser-based authentications.

#### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits | Description   |
|--------------------------|-----------------|---|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | String<br>N/A   | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup   |
| API token<br><api_token> | String<br>N/A   | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description |
|---------------|-----------------|-------------|
|---------------|-----------------|-------------|

Production: <https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/>

### Optional connection object field

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits                  | Description  |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|--|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br><br>true/false | Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully<br><br>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required |

### MPI 3DS Authentication Request transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name                          | Type and Limits                          | Description  |
|--|--|--|
| message category<br><message_category> | <i>String</i><br><br>2-character numeric | Whether the authentication request is for a payment or non-payment use:<br><br>01 = payment authentication (PA)<br><br>02 = non-payment authentication (NPA) |
| device channel<br><device_channel>     | <i>String</i><br><br>2-character numeric | The interface used to initiate the authentication:<br><br>02 = Browser (BRW)<br><br>03 = 3DS Requestor Initiated (3RI)                                       |
| ri indicator<br><ri_indicator>         | <i>String</i><br><br>2-character numeric | The type of 3DS Requestor Initiated (3RI) request:   |

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|---|--|---|
| <div> <b>NOTE:</b> Visa Secure only support ri_Indicator = 6 or 11 for Payment Transaction and ri_Indicator = 3, 4, 5 and 10 for Non Payment Transaction </div> |  | 01 = Recurring  |
|   |  | 02 = Installment  |
|   |  | 03 = Add Card   |
|   |  | 04 = Maintain Card Information  |
|   |  | 05 = Account verification   |
|   |  | 06 = Split/Delayed Shipment   |
|   |  | 07 = Top-up   |
|   |  | 08 = Mail Order   |
|   |  | 09 = Telephone Order  |
|   |  | 10 = Whitelist  |
|   |  | 11 = Other Payment  |
| order ID<br><order_id>  | String<br>50-character alphanumeric<br>a-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces  | Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.<br><br>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction.   |
| data key<br><data_key><br>OR<br>credit card number<br><pan>   | String<br>data key limits:<br>25-character alphanumeric<br>credit card number limits:<br>max 20-character alphanumeric | <b>data key description:</b><br><br>Unique identifier for a Vault profile, and used in future Vault financial transactions to associate a transaction with that profile<br><br>Data key is generated by Moneris and returned to you in the Receipt object when the profile is first registered<br><br><b>credit card number description:</b><br><br>Credit card number, usually 16 digits |

| Variable Name                        | Type and Limits   | Description   |
|--------------------------------------|---|---|
|                                      |   | <p>—field can be maximum 20 digits in support of future expansion of card number ranges.</p> <p>Carries the token for network tokenization transactions.</p>                        |
| expiry date<br><expdate>             | <i>String</i><br><br>4-character alphanumeric<br><br>YYMM   | Expiry date of the credit card, in YYMM format. <div> <b>NOTE:</b> This is the reverse of the MMY date format that is presented on the card.           </div>                       |
| amount<br><amount>                   | <i>String</i><br><br>10-character decimal<br><br>Up to 7 digits (dollars) + decimal point (.) + 2 digits (cents) after the decimal point<br><br><div> <b>EXAMPLE:</b> 1234567.89           </div> | Transaction dollar amount<br><br>This must contain at least 3 digits, two of which are penny values<br><br>Minimum allowable value = \$0.01, maximum allowable value = \$9999999.99 |
| cardholder name<br><cardholder_name> | <i>String</i><br><br>45-character alphanumeric<br><br><div> <b>NOTE:</b> Accented characters are not allowable           </div>   | Name of the cardholder  |
| billing address<br><bill_address1>   | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alphanumeric  | Cardholder billing address  |
| billing province<br><bill_province>  | <i>String</i><br><br>3-character alphanumeric   | Cardholder province or state<br><br>Defined in country subdivision ISO 3166-2   |
| billing city<br><bill_city>          | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alphanumeric  | Cardholder billing city   |

| Variable Name                              | Type and Limits                              | Description   |
|--|--|---|
| billing postal code<br><bill_postal_code>  | <i>String</i><br>16-character alphanumeric   | Cardholder billing postal code  |
| billing country<br><bill_country>          | <i>String</i><br>3-character alphanumeric    | Cardholder billing country<br>Defined as 3 digit country code ISO 3166-1  |
| shipping address<br><ship_address1>        | <i>String</i><br>50-character alphanumeric   | Shipping destination address  |
| shipping province<br><ship_province>       | <i>String</i><br>3-character alphanumeric    | Shipping destination province or state<br>Defined in country subdivision ISO 3166-2   |
| shipping city<br><ship_city>               | <i>String</i><br>50-character alphanumeric   | Shipping destination city   |
| shipping postal code<br><ship_postal_code> | <i>String</i><br>16-character alphanumeric   | Shipping destination postal or ZIP code   |
| shipping country<br><ship_country>         | <i>String</i><br>3-character alphanumeric    | Shipping destination country<br>Defined as 3-digit country code in ISO 3166-1   |
| email<br><email>                           | <i>String</i><br>254-character alpha-numeric | Cardholder email address<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> This field is not mandatory, but it is required. It is highly recommended to provide the cardholder's email address. Lack of providing the cardholder's address, might increase the risk of rejects. |

### MPI 3DS Authentication Request transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name          | Type and Limits                      | Description                                 |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------|---|
| currency<br><currency> | <i>String</i><br>3-character numeric | ISO 4217 3 digit currency code<br>CAD = 124 |

| Variable Name  | Type and Limits                                 | Description   |
|--|---|---|
|  |   | USD = 840<br><br><div> <b>NOTE:</b> This field should not be sent unless Multi Currency Pricing is enabled on your merchant account         </div>  |
| decoupled request indicator<br><br><decoupled_request_indicator> | <i>String</i><br><br>1-character alphabetic     | Whether the request utilizes Decoupled Authentication or not, if the ACS confirms its use.<br><br>Y = Decoupled Authentication is supported and preferred if challenge is necessary<br><br>N = Do not use Decoupled Authentication (Default)<br><br>Defaults to N if unused.  |
| decoupled request max time<br><br><decoupled_request_max_time>   | <i>String</i><br><br>5-character numeric        | The maximum minutes that Moneris waits for an ACS to provide results.<br><br>Numeric values between 1 and 10080. The max is equivalent to 7 days.<br><br>Conditional. Required if device_channel = 03 and decoupled_request_indicator = Y   |
| decoupled request async URL<br><br><decoupled_request_async_url> | <i>String</i><br><br>256-character alphanumeric | Your URL where Moneris will POST the response back from ACS. Moneris reattempts 3 times to POST the response.<br><br>Conditional. Only sent if decoupled_request_indicator = Y  |
| prior request auth info<br><br><prior_request_auth_info>         | <i>Object</i><br><br>N/A                        | Object containing details for a prior 3DS authentication for this series of transactions. This is a nested object within the authentication transaction, and required when storing or using the information about the prior authentication for that card. For information about fields in the Prior Authentication Info object, see MPI 3DS Prior Authentication Info Object and Variables. |



**MPI 3DS Prior Authentication Info**

| Variable Name  | Type and Limits                            | Description   |
|--|--|---|
| prior request auth data<br><prior_request_auth_data>           | <i>String</i><br>36-character alphanumeric | Refers to the DSTransID in the response of the previous 3DS authentication.   |
| prior request ref<br><prior_request_auth_ref>                  | <i>String</i><br>36-character alphanumeric | Refers to the 3DS ACS Transaction ID in the response of the previous 3DS authentication.  |
| prior request auth method<br><prior_request_auth_method>       | <i>String</i><br>2-character numeric       | Mechanism used by the cardholder to authenticate in the previous 3DS authentication:<br><br>01 = Frictionless authentication<br><br>02 = Challenge authentication<br><br>03 = AVS verified<br><br>04 = Other issuer methods |
| prior request auth timestamp<br><prior_request_auth_timestamp> | <i>String</i><br>12-character numeric      | Date and time in UTC of the prior cardholder authentication. Found in the previous 3DS authentication response as 3DS Auth TimeStamp.<br><br>Format is YYYYMMDDHHMM.  |

**Sample MPI 3DS Authentication Request - 3RI without recurring**

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<Mpi2Request>
  <store_id>store5</store_id>
  <api_token>yesguy</api_token>
  <threads_authentication>
    <message_category>01</message_category>
    <device_channel>03</device_channel>
    <decoupled_request_max_time>10080</decoupled_request_max_time>
    <decoupled_request_indicator>Y</decoupled_request_indicator>
    <decoupled_request_async_url>my.server.com</decoupled_request_async_url>
    <ri_indicator>08</ri_indicator>
    <prior_authentication_info>

```

```

        <prior_request_ref>d7clee99-9478-44a6-b1f2-391e29c6b340</prior_request_ref>
        <prior_request_auth_data>abcdabdc...</prior_request_auth_data>
        <prior_request_auth_method>01</prior_request_auth_method>
        <prior_request_auth_timestamp>201710282113</prior_request_auth_timestamp>
    </prior_authentication_info>
    <order_id>danlookup100666</order_id>
    <cardholder_name>John Smith</cardholder_name>
    <pan>4606633870436092</pan>
    <expdate>2105</expdate>
    <amount>1.00</amount>
    <threeds_completion_ind>Y</threeds_completion_ind>
    <request_type>01</request_type>
</threeds_authentication>
</Mpi2Request>

```

### Sample MPI 3DS Authentication Response - 3RI, decoupled challenge

```

<?xml version="1.0"?>
<Mpi2Response>
    <receipt>
        <MessageType>ARes</MessageType>
        <ResponseCode>001</ResponseCode>
        <Message>SUCCESS</Message>
        <ReceiptId>danlookup1006663333333333</ReceiptId>
        <ThreeDSMethodURL></ThreeDSMethodURL>
        <ThreeDSMethodData></ThreeDSMethodData>
        <ChallengeURL></ChallengeURL>
        <ChallengeData></ChallengeData>
        <TransStatus>D</TransStatus>
        <ThreeDSSTransId>a3aa9295-7ce0-4856-a969-4951bb4b9310</ThreeDSSTransId>
        <DSTransId>88632ac9-5873-4cf2-9637-b9cd8006e359</DSTransId>
        <ECI></ECI>
        <Cavv></Cavv>
        <TransStatusReason></TransStatusReason>
        <CardholderInfo></CardholderInfo>
        <ThreeDSVersion></ThreeDSVersion>
        <AuthenticationType></AuthenticationType>
        <ThreeDSAcSTransID>da49dc91-2f94-4c4a-bcaa-9700b9d7b205</ThreeDSAcSTransID>
        <ThreeDSAuthTimeStamp></ThreeDSAuthTimeStamp>
    </receipt>
</Mpi2Response>

```

## Sample MPI 3DS Authentication Response - 3RI, decoupled async response (second)

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<Mpi2Response>
  <receipt>
    <MessageType></MessageType>
    <ResponseCode>001</ResponseCode>
    <ReceiptId>0641172836</ReceiptId>
    <ThreeDSMethodURL></ThreeDSMethodURL>
    <ThreeDSMethodData></ThreeDSMethodData>
    <ChallengeURL></ChallengeURL>
    <ChallengeData></ChallengeData>
    <ChallengeCompletionIndicator></ChallengeCompletionIndicator>
    <TransStatus>Y</TransStatus>
    <ECI>5</ECI>
    <ThreeDSServerTransId>8ed21a5c-99c9-47ae-9e2e-5ab576de8768</ThreeDSServerTransId>
    <Cavv>AAICB5dnRwAAAEhEEkCQdAAAAA=</Cavv>
    <Message>SUCCESS</Message>
    <TransStatusReason></TransStatusReason>
    <CardholderInfo></CardholderInfo>
    <ThreeDSVersion></ThreeDSVersion>
    <AuthenticationType></AuthenticationType>
    <ThreeDSAcSTransID>da49dc91-2f94-4c4a-bcaa-9700b9d7b205</ThreeDSAcSTransID>
    <ThreeDSAuthTimeStamp></ThreeDSAuthTimeStamp>
  </receipt>
</Mpi2Response>
```

## 5.5 Handling the Challenge Flow

If you get a TransStatus = “C” in your threeDSAuthentication Response, then a form must be built and POSTed to the URL provided.

The form can be dynamically generated and added to the DOM and submitted or created and submitted in a manner that suits your environment. This can be built as a full page redirect or presented as an inline iframe or as a lightbox.

If you wish for this to be loaded inside a defined space it must conform to the size specified in the challengeWindowSize from the request. The “action” is retrieved from the ChallengeURL and the “creq” field is retrieved from the ChallengeData.

Below is a sample of a basic static form to help visualize the data and fields that need to be submitted.

```
<form method="POST" action="https://3dsurl.example.com/do3DS">
  <input name="creq" value="thisissamplechallengedata1234567890">
```

&lt;/form&gt;

### 5.5.1 Cavv Lookup Request

(Challenge Flow Only)

In the challenge flow, the 3DS server will POST a **cres** value back to the notificationURL provided in the threeDSAuthentication request once the cardholder has completed the challenge. The “cres” is then posted to the Moneris 3DS server in the CavvLookup request, the response to this request will include the result of the challenge, which will include the eci and the cavv if the challenge was successful.

#### XML transaction object

&lt;cavv\_lookup&gt;

#### Cavv Lookup Request transaction object definition

&lt;!ELEMENT cavv\_lookup (cres)&gt;

#### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits | Description  |
|--------------------------|-----------------|--|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | String<br>N/A   | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup  |
| API token<br><api_token> | String<br>N/A   | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store’s Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

#### Optional connection object field

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits       | Description   |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------|---|
| status check<br><status_check> | Boolean<br>true/false | Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
|               |                 | <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required</p> </div> |

### Cavv Lookup Request transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name | Type and Limits             | Description                      |
|---------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| cres          | <i>String</i>               | Response data from the challenge |
| <cres>        | 200-character alpha-numeric |                                  |

## 5.6 Handling the Decoupled Authentication Flow

If you get a TransStatus = “D” in your threeDSAuthentication Response, then your server must be prepared to accept a second asynchronous response from Moneris.

The cardholder will be engaged by their issuer for cardholder authentication outside the 3DS protocol. This may involve alternate authentication applications or SMS prompts to the cardholder to confirm.

The cardholder is given up to 7 days to complete this decoupled challenge. Once completed, the issuer will communicate to Moneris and our MPI system sends a second 3DS Authentication Response to the address you define in <decoupled\_request\_async\_url>

### Sample Authentication Decoupled Authentication Flow

```
xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<Mpi2Request>
  <store_id>store5</store_id>
  <api_token>yesguy</api_token>
  <threads_authentication>
    <message_category>01</message_category>
    <device_channel>03</device_channel>
    <decoupled_request_max_time>10080</decoupled_request_max_time>
    <decoupled_request_indicator>Y</decoupled_request_indicator>
  </threads_authentication>
</Mpi2Request>
```

```

<decoupled_request_async_url></decoupled_request_async_url>
<ri_indicator>08</ri_indicator>
<prior_authentication_info>
  <prior_request_ref></prior_request_ref>
  <prior_request_auth_data></prior_request_auth_data>
  <prior_request_auth_method>01</prior_request_auth_method>
  <prior_request_auth_timestamp></prior_request_auth_timestamp>
</prior_authentication_info>
<order_id>danlookup100666</order_id>
<cardholder_name>John Smith</cardholder_name>
<pan>378364151363839</pan>
<expdate>2105</expdate>
<amount>1.00</amount>
<threads_completion_ind>Y</threads_completion_ind>
<request_type>01</request_type>
</threads_authentication>
</Mpi2Request>

```

## 5.7 Performing the Authorization

Once the authentication is complete and a CAVV and ECI value are retrieved, these values can be sent to Moneris using the transactions Purchase with 3-D Secure – cavvPurchase or Pre-Authorization with 3-D Secure – cavvPreauth.

### 5.7.1 Purchase with 3-D Secure – cavv\_purchase

The Purchase with 3-D Secure transaction follows a 3-D Secure MPI authentication. After receiving confirmation from the MPI ACS transaction, Purchase with 3-D Secure verifies funds on the customer's card, removes the funds and prepares them for deposit into the merchant's account.

In addition to 3-D Secure transactions, this transaction can also be used to process Apple Pay and Google Pay™ transactions.

For mobile wallets, this transaction is applicable only if choosing to integrate directly to Apple Wallet or Google Wallet (if not using the Moneris Apple Pay or Google Pay™ SDKs). Refer to Apple or Google developer portals for details on integrating directly to their wallets to retrieve the payload data.

#### XML transaction object

```
<cavv_purchase>
```

#### Purchase with 3-D Secure transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT cavv_purchase (order_id, cust_id?, amount, pan, expdate, cavv,
dynamic_descriptor?, wallet_indicator?, cust_info?, avs_info?, cvd_info?,
```

```
recur?, cof_info?, pbb_info?)>
```

### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits      | Description  |
|--------------------------|----------------------|--|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | <i>String</i><br>N/A | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup  |
| API token<br><api_token> | <i>String</i><br>N/A | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

### Optional connection object field

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits              | Description  |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required</p> </div> |

**Purchase with 3-D Secure transaction request fields – Required**

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|---|--|---|
| order ID<br><order_id>  | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alpha-numeric-A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces   | Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.<br><br>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction. |
| amount<br><amount>  | <i>String</i><br><br>10-character decimal<br><br>Up to 7 digits (dollars) + decimal point (.) + 2 digits (cents) after the decimal point<br><br><b>EXAMPLE:</b> 1234567.89 | Transaction dollar amount<br><br>This must contain at least 3 digits, two of which are penny values<br><br>Minimum allowable value = \$0.01, maximum allowable value = \$9999999.99   |
| credit card number<br><pan>                                   | <i>String</i><br><br>max 20-character alpha-numeric  | Credit card number, usually 16 digits —field can be maximum 20 digits in support of future expansion of card number ranges.<br><br>Carries the token for network tokenization transactions.   |
| expiry date<br><expdate>                                      | <i>String</i><br><br>4-character alphanumeric<br><br>YYMM  | Expiry date of the credit card, in YYYYMM format.<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> This is the reverse of the MMYM date format that is presented on the card.  |
| Cardholder Authentication Verification Value (CAVV)<br><cavv> | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alphanumeric   | Value provided by the Moneris MPI or by a third-party MPI<br><br>Sent in all 3-D Secure transactions,   |



| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description  |
|---------------|-----------------|--|
|               |                 | <p>including Verified By Visa, MasterCard SecureCode, American Express SafeKey</p> <p>For Purchase and Pre-Authorization transactions with 3-D Secure for Apple Pay and Google Pay, the CAVV field contains the decrypted cryptogram</p> |

### 3-D Secure 2.2 -specific fields – Required

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits                           | Description  |
|---|---|--|
| 3DS version<br><threads_version>  | <i>String</i><br><br>10-character numeric | Acceptable values:<br><br>2.0.0 = 3DS protocol 2.0.0<br><br>2.1.0 = 3DS protocol 2.1.0<br><br>2.2.0 = 3DS protocol 2.2.0<br><br>2.3.0 = 3DS protocol 2.3.0 |
| <b>NOTE:</b> Mandatory for financial transactions using 3rd Party 3-D Secure services.  |   |  |
| 3DS server transaction ID<br><threads_server_trans_id>  | <i>String</i><br><br>36-character numeric | Data is obtained from a Cavv Lookup Request or MPI 3DS Authentication Request transaction  |
| <b>NOTE:</b> Mandatory for financial transactions using 3rd Party 3-D Secure services - obtained from the Cavv Lookup request or MPI 3DS Authentication request |   |  |

### Purchase with 3-D Secure transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|--------------------------|--|--|
| customer ID<br><cust_id> | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alphanumeric<br><br><b>NOTE:</b><br>Some special characters are not allowed:<br>< > \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \ | Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier<br><br>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center |

| Variable Name                              | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|--|--|--|
| dynamic descriptor<br><dynamic_descriptor> | <i>String</i><br>20-character alphanumeric<br>total of 22 characters including your merchant name and separator<br><div> <b>NOTE:</b><br/>           Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>           &lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \         </div> | <p>Merchant-defined description sent on a per-transaction basis that will appear on the credit card statement appended to the merchant's business name</p> <p>Dependent on the card issuer, the statement will typically show the dynamic descriptor appended to the merchant's existing business name separated by the "/" character; additional characters will be truncated</p> <div> <b>NOTE:</b> The 22-character maximum limit must take the "/" into account as one of the characters         </div>                                    |
| wallet indicator<br><wallet_indicator>     | <i>String</i><br>3-character alphanumeric  | <p>Indicates when a card number has been collected via a digital wallet, such as in Apple Pay, Google Pay™, Visa Checkout and Mastercard MasterPass, or via network tokenization from the card brand.</p> <p>Required for Apple Pay, Google Pay™ transactions whereby you are using your own API to decrypt the payload</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <p>APP – Apple Pay In-App</p> <p>APW – Apple Pay on the Web</p> <p>GPP – Google Pay™ In-App</p> <p>GPW – Google Pay™ Web</p> <p>VCO – Visa Checkout</p> <p>MMP – Mastercard MasterPass</p> |

| Variable Name                                | Type and Limits                     | Description   |
|--|-------------------------------------|---|
|  |                                     | <p><b>NOTE:</b> Please note that if this field is included to indicate Apple Pay or Google Pay™, then Convenience Fee is not supported.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Network tokenization wallet indicators are not in the API call but are in the merchant resource centre (MRC).</p> |
| foreign indicator<br><foreign_indicator>     | <i>Boolean</i><br><br>true or false | Used to identify domestic transactions processed by a marketplace merchant that is in a different country.  |
| Customer Information<br><cust_info>          | <i>Object</i><br><br>N/A            | Contains fields that describe miscellaneous customer information, billing and shipping information, and item information  |
| AVS Information<br><avs_info>                | <i>Object</i><br><br>N/A            | Contains fields applying to the Address Verification Service (AVS) e-fraud tool   |
| CVD Information<br><cvd_info>                | <i>Object</i><br><br>N/A            | Contains fields related to the Card Validation Digits e-fraud tool  |
| Recurring Billing<br><recur>                 | <i>Object</i><br><br>N/A            | Contains fields related to Recurring Billing  |
| Credential on File Information<br><cof_info> | <i>Object</i><br><br>N/A            | Required when storing cardholder credentials or using these credentials in subsequent transactions.   |

### 3-D Secure 2.2 -specific fields – Optional

| Variable Name                        | Type and Limits                                | Description   |
|--------------------------------------|--|---|
| DS transaction ID<br><br>ds_trans_id | <i>String</i><br><br>36-character alphanumeric | Refers to the DSTransID in the response of the previous 3DS authentication. |

| Variable Name  | Type and Limits | Description |
|--|-----------------|-------------|
| <div> <b>NOTE:</b> Only used in financial transactions using 3rd Party 3-D Secure services. </div> |                 |             |

### 5.7.2 Pre-Authorization with 3-D Secure – cavv\_preauth

The Pre-Authorization with 3-D Secure transaction follows a 3-D Secure MPI authentication. After receiving confirmation from the MPI ACS transaction, the Pre-Authorization with 3-D Secure verifies funds on the customer's card, removes the funds and prepares them for deposit into the merchant's account.

In addition to 3-D Secure transactions, this transaction can also be used to process Apple Pay and Google Pay™ transactions.

For mobile wallets, this transaction is applicable only if choosing to integrate directly to Apple Wallet or Google Wallet (if not using the Moneris Apple Pay or Google Pay™ SDKs). Refer to Apple or Google developer portals for details on integrating directly to their wallets to retrieve the payload data.

#### XML transaction object

<cavv\_preauth>

#### Pre-Authorization with 3-D Secure transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT cavv_preauth (order_id, cust_id? amount, pan, expdate, cavv,
dynamic_descriptor?, wallet_indicator?, cust_info?, avs_info?, cvd_info?, cof_
info?, pbb_info?)>
```

#### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
| store ID      | <i>String</i>   | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup   |
| <store_id>    | N/A             |   |
| API token     | <i>String</i>   | Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation   |
| <api_token>   | N/A             |   |
|               |                 | To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs: |
|               |                 | Testing: <a href="https://esqa.-">https://esqa.-</a>  |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
|               |                 | <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">moneris.com/mpg/</a><br>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a> |

### Optional connection object field

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits                  | Description   |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|---|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br><br>true/false | Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully<br><br>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true<br><br><div> <b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required </div> |

### Pre-Authorization with 3-D Secure transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name          | Type and Limits   | Description   |
|------------------------|---|---|
| order ID<br><order_id> | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alphanumeric-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces   | Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.<br><br>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction. |
| amount<br><amount>     | <i>String</i><br><br>10-character decimal<br><br>Up to 7 digits (dollars) + | Transaction dollar amount<br><br>This must contain at least 3 digits, two of which are penny values   |

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|---|--|---|
|   | decimal point (.) + 2 digits (cents) after the decimal point<br><br><b>EXAMPLE:</b> 1234567.89 | Minimum allowable value = \$0.01, maximum allowable value = \$9999999.99  |
| credit card number<br><pan>                                   | <i>String</i><br>max 20-character alphanumeric   | Credit card number, usually 16 digits —field can be maximum 20 digits in support of future expansion of card number ranges.<br><br>Carries the token for network tokenization transactions.   |
| expiry date<br><expdate>                                      | <i>String</i><br>4-character alphanumeric<br><br>YYMM  | Expiry date of the credit card, in YYMM format.<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> This is the reverse of the MMYM date format that is presented on the card.  |
| Cardholder Authentication Verification Value (CAVV)<br><cavv> | <i>String</i><br>50-character alphanumeric   | Value provided by the Moneris MPI or by a third-party MPI<br><br>Sent in all 3-D Secure transactions, including Verified By Visa, MasterCard SecureCode, American Express SafeKey<br><br>For Purchase and Pre-Authorization transactions with 3-D Secure for Apple Pay and Google Pay, the CAVV field contains the decrypted cryptogram |

### 3-D Secure 2.2 -specific fields – Required

| Variable Name                    | Type and Limits                       | Description  |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--|
| 3DS version<br><threeds_version> | <i>String</i><br>10-character numeric | Acceptable values:<br><br>2.0.0 = 3DS protocol 2.0.0<br><br>2.1.0 = 3DS protocol 2.1.0 |

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits                    | Description   |
|---|------------------------------------|---|
| <b>NOTE:</b> Mandatory for financial transactions using 3rd Party 3-D Secure services.  |                                    | 2.2.0 = 3DS protocol 2.2.0  |
|   |                                    | 2.3.0 = 3DS protocol 2.3.0  |
| 3DS server transaction ID<br><threeds_server_trans_id>  | String<br><br>36-character numeric | Data is obtained from a Cavv Lookup Request or MPI 3DS Authentication Request transaction |
| <b>NOTE:</b> Mandatory for financial transactions using 3rd Party 3-D Secure services - obtained from the Cavv Lookup request or MPI 3DS Authentication request |                                    |   |

### Pre-Authorization with 3-D Secure transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name                              | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|--|--|---|
| customer ID<br><cust_id>                   | String<br><br>50-character alphanumeric<br><br><b>NOTE:</b><br>Some special characters are not allowed:<br>< > \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \  | Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier<br><br>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center  |
| dynamic descriptor<br><dynamic_descriptor> | String<br><br>20-character alphanumeric<br><br>total of 22 characters including your merchant name and separator<br><br><b>NOTE:</b><br>Some special characters are not allowed:<br>< > \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \ | Merchant-defined description sent on a per-transaction basis that will appear on the credit card statement appended to the merchant's business name<br><br>Dependent on the card issuer, the statement will typically show the dynamic descriptor appended to the merchant's existing business name separated by the "/" character; additional characters will be truncated<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> The 22-character maximum limit must take the "/" into account as one of |

| Variable Name                            | Type and Limits                    | Description  |
|--|------------------------------------|--|
|  |                                    | the characters   |
| wallet indicator<br><wallet_indicator>   | String<br>3-character alphanumeric | <p>Indicates when a card number has been collected via a digital wallet, such as in Apple Pay, Google Pay™, Visa Checkout and Mastercard MasterPass, or via network tokenization from the card brand.</p> <p>Required for Apple Pay, Google Pay™ transactions whereby you are using your own API to decrypt the payload</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <p>APP – Apple Pay In-App</p> <p>APW – Apple Pay on the Web</p> <p>GPP – Google Pay™ In-App</p> <p>GPW – Google Pay™ Web</p> <p>VCO – Visa Checkout</p> <p>MMP – Mastercard MasterPass</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Please note that if this field is included to indicate Apple Pay or Google Pay™, then Convenience Fee is not supported.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Network tokenization wallet indicators are not in the API call but are in the merchant resource centre (MRC).</p> |
| foreign indicator<br><foreign_indicator> | Boolean<br>true or false           | Used to identify domestic transactions processed by a marketplace merchant that is in a different country.   |
| Customer Information                     | Object                             | Contains fields that describe mis-   |



| Variable Name                                | Type and Limits | Description  |
|--|-----------------|--|
| <cust_info>                                  | N/A             | cellaneous customer information, billing and shipping information, and item information  |
| is estimated                                 | Boolean         | Indicates if this preauthorization is using an estimated amount. Estimations allow for incrementing the amount held via subsequent incrementalAuth requests. Defaults to false. <div><b>NOTE:</b> Please note that if this field is true, the preauthorization is only eligible for a single Preauthorization Completion. Any completion sent for partial completion is treated as a full completion (ship_indicator= P is treated as = F when is_estimated= true on the original preauth)</div> |
| is_estimated                                 | true/false      |  |
|  |                 |  |
| AVS Information<br><avs_info>                | Object<br>N/A   | Contains fields applying to the Address Verification Service (AVS) e-fraud tool  |
| CVD Information<br><cvd_info>                | Object<br>N/A   | Contains fields related to the Card Validation Digits e-fraud tool   |
| Recurring Billing<br><recur>                 | Object<br>N/A   | Contains fields related to Recurring Billing   |
| Credential on File Information<br><cof_info> | Object<br>N/A   | Required when storing cardholder credentials or using these credentials in subsequent transactions.  |

### 3-D Secure 2.2 -specific fields – Optional

| Variable Name                      | Type and Limits                            | Description   |
|------------------------------------|--|---|
| DS transaction ID<br><ds_trans_id> | <i>String</i><br>36-character alphanumeric | Refers to the DSTransID in the response of the previous 3DS authentication. |

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits | Description |
|---|-----------------|-------------|
| <b>NOTE:</b> Only used in financial transactions using 3rd Party 3-D Secure services. |                 |             |

## 5.8 Testing Your 3-D Secure 2.2 Integration

In the testing stage of development:

1. Use the testing URL as Host for your requests:  
esqa.moneris.com
2. In all Card Lookup Request transactions, make sure that you are using the testing version of your credentials for store ID and API token
3. In all MPI 3DS Authentication Request transactions, make sure that you are using the testing version of your credentials for store ID and API token
4. In all Cavv Lookup Request transactions, make sure that you are using the testing version of your credentials for store ID and API token

## 5.9 Moving to Production With 3-D Secure 2.2

Once you have finished testing your 3D Secure 2.2 integration, do the following to move the integration into production:

1. Use the production URL as Host for your requests:  
www3.moneris.com
2. In all Card Lookup Request transactions, make sure that you are using the production version of your credentials for store ID and API token
3. In all MPI 3DS Authentication Request transactions, make sure that you are using the production version of your credentials for store ID and API token
4. In all Cavv Lookup Request transactions, make sure that you are using the production version of your credentials for store ID and API token

## 5.10 3-D Secure 2.2 TransStatus Codes

| Value | Description                    | Comments  |
|-------|--------------------------------|---|
| Y     | Authenticated                  | Cardholder has been fully authenticated   |
| D     | Challenge Required (Decoupled) | Cardholder requires a challenge using Decoupled Authentication  |
| A     | Authentication Attempt         | A proof of authentication attempt was generated   |
| C     | Challenge Required             | Cardholder requires a challenge to complete authentication  |
| U     | Not Authenticated              | Authentication could not be performed due to technical or other issue   |
| N     | Not Authenticated              | Not authenticated   |
| R     | Not Authenticated              | Not authenticated because the Issuer is rejecting authentication and requesting that authorisation not be attempted |

## 5.11 3-D Secure 2.2 Commons TransStatusReason Decline Codes

The following codes are returned by the 3-D Secure service in order to provide additional information about the 3-D Secure transaction status.

| TransStatusReason Code | Description                            |
|------------------------|--|
| 01                     | Card authentication failed             |
| 02                     | Unknown Device                         |
| 03                     | Unsupported Device                     |
| 04                     | Exceeds authentication frequency limit |
| 05                     | Expired card                           |
| 06                     | Invalid card number                    |

| TransStatusReason Code | Description   |
|------------------------|---|
| 07                     | Invalid transaction   |
| 08                     | No Card record  |
| 09                     | Security failure  |
| 10                     | Stolen card   |
| 11                     | Suspected fraud   |
| 12                     | Transaction not permitted to cardholder   |
| 13                     | Cardholder not enrolled in service  |
| 14                     | Transaction timed out at the ACS  |
| 15                     | Low confidence  |
| 16                     | Medium confidence   |
| 17                     | High confidence   |
| 18                     | Very High confidence  |
| 19                     | Exceeds ACS maximum challenges  |
| 20                     | Non-Payment transaction not supported   |
| 21                     | 3RI transaction not supported   |
| 22                     | ACS technical issue   |
| 23                     | Decoupled Authentication required by ACS but not requested by 3DS Requestor                                   |
| 24                     | 3DS Requestor Decoupled Max Expiry Time exceeded  |
| 25                     | Decoupled Authentication was provided insufficient time to authenticate cardholder. ACS will not make attempt |
| 26                     | Authentication attempted but not performed by   |

| TransStatusReason Code | Description |
|------------------------|-------------|
|------------------------|-------------|

the cardholder

**NOTE:** For a list of all TransStatus Decline Codes, please see Reference section of 3D Secure 2.2 at <https://developer.moneris.com>.

## 5.12 CAVV Result Codes

The Cardholder Authentication Verification Value (CAVV), the Accountholder Authentication Value (AAV), and the American Express Verification Value (AEVV), are the values that allows Visa, Mastercard and American Express to validate the integrity of the Visa Secure, Mastercard Identity Check and American Express SafeKey transaction data. These values are passed back from the issuer to the merchant after the authentication has taken place. The merchant then integrates the CAVV/AAV/AEVV value into the authorization request using the Purchase or Pre-Authorization with 3-D Secure transaction type.

To summarize this process:

1. Merchant conducts 3-D Secure authentication request and receives CAVV/AAV/AEVV value in response
2. Merchant sends the CAVV/AAV/AEVV value to Moneris using the Purchase or Pre-Authorization with 3-D Secure transaction type and receives the CAVV result code in the response

The following tables describe the contents of the CAVV data response and what it means to the merchant.

### 5.12.1 Visa CAVV Result Codes

#### Visa CAVV result codes

| Result Code | Message                                 | Significance to Merchants  |
|-------------|---|--|
| Blank       | CAVV not present or not verified        | Not a Visa Secure transaction. No liability shift and merchant is not protected from chargebacks |
| 0           | CAVV authentication results invalid     | Not a Visa Secure transaction. No liability shift and merchant is not protected from chargebacks |
| 1           | CAVV failed validation (authentication) | Provided that you have implemented the Visa Secureprocess correctly, the liability for this      |

| Result Code | Message                                       | Significance to Merchants   |
|-------------|---|---|
|             |   | transaction should remain with the Issuer for chargeback reason codes covered by Visa Secure.   |
| 2           | CAVV passed validation (authentication)       | Fully authenticated transaction. There is a liability shift and the merchant is protected from chargebacks.                           |
| 3, 8, A     | CAVV passed validation (attempt)              | Visa Secure has been attempted. There is a liability shift and the merchant is protected from certain card fraud-related chargebacks. |
| 4, 7, 9     | CAVV failed validation (attempt)              | Visa Secure has been attempted. There is a liability shift and the merchant is protected from certain card fraud-related chargebacks. |
| 6           | CAVV not validated - Issuer not participating | Visa Secure has been attempted. There is a liability shift and the merchant is protected from certain card fraud-related chargebacks. |
| B           | CAVV passed validation; information only      | Not a Visa Secure transaction. No liability shift and merchant is not protected from chargebacks                                      |
| C           | CAVV was not validated (attempt)              | Visa Secure has been attempted. There is a liability shift and the merchant is protected from certain card fraud-related chargebacks. |
| D           | CAVV was not validated (authentication)       | Visa Secure has been attempted. There is a liability shift and the merchant is protected from certain card fraud-related chargebacks. |

### 5.12.2 Mastercard CAVV Result Codes

#### Mastercard CAVV result codes

| Result Code | Message                  | Significance to Merchants  |
|-------------|--------------------------|--|
| 0           | Authentication failed    | Not a Mastercard Identity Check transaction. No liability shift and merchant is not protected from chargebacks |
| 1           | Authentication attempted | Mastercard Identity Check has been attempted.  |

| Result Code | Message                   | Significance to Merchants   |
|-------------|---------------------------|---|
|             |                           | There is a liability shift and the merchant is protected from certain card fraud-related chargebacks (international commercial cards excluded). |
| 2           | Authentication successful | Fully authenticated transaction. There is a liability shift and the merchant is protected from chargebacks.                                     |

### 5.12.3 American Express CAVV Result Codes

#### American Express CAVV result codes

**NOTE:** American Express SafeKey is only available to American Express direct acquired merchants (i.e., not OptBlue merchants). Any questions pertaining to chargebacks, liability and disputes should be addressed to your American Express representative given that American Express is the acquirer of record for these merchants.

| Result Code | Description  |
|-------------|--|
| 1           | AEVV Failed - Authentication, Issuer Key   |
| 2           | AEVV Passed - Authentication, Issuer Key   |
| 3           | AEVV Passed - Attempt, Issuer Key  |
| 4           | AEVV Failed - Attempt, Issuer Key  |
| 7           | AEVV Failed - Attempt, Issuer not participating, Network Key                                 |
| 8           | AEVV Passed - Attempt, Issuer not participating, Network Key                                 |
| 9           | AEVV Failed - Attempt, Participating, Access Control Server (ACS) not available, Network Key |
| A           | AEVV Passed - Attempt, Participating, Access Control Server (ACS) not available, Network Key |

| Result Code | Description    |
|-------------|----------------|
| U           | AEVV Unchecked |



## 6 Installments by Visa

- 6.1 About Installments by Visa
- 6.2 Installments by Visa Transaction Types
- 6.3 Sending Transactions with Installments by Visa
- 6.4 Installment Plan Lookup
- 6.5 Vault Installment Plan Lookup
- 6.6 Installment Info Object

### 6.1 About Installments by Visa

Installments by Visa enables issuers the ability to offer cardholders installment payment plans at the time of purchase. When a cardholder accepts an installment plan option, the merchant receives the payment in full, and the cardholder pays the issuer according to the plan.

For a full list of definitions of the request and response fields see B.1 Definition of Response Fields – Installments by Visa

### 6.2 Installments by Visa Transaction Types

Financial transactions that support Installments by Visa include the following:

- Purchase
- Pre-Authorization
- Pre-Authorization Completion
- Purchase Correction
- Refund

- Purchase with Vault – res\_purchase\_cc
- Pre-Authorization with Vault – res\_preauth\_cc

**NOTE:** Independent Refund transactions do not support Installments by Visa

**WARNING:** Do not send the Installment Info object on any transaction that is not intended to offer Installments by Visa functionality; doing so may cause the transaction to fail.

## 6.3 Sending Transactions with Installments by Visa

Sending transactions with Installments by Visa functionality involves the following steps:

1. Send the Installment Plan Lookup or Vault Installment Plan Lookup (for Vault transactions) transaction request to obtain the **installment plan ID**, **installment plan reference** and **terms and conditions version** data in the response
2. Using the data obtained in the response above, send the Installment Info object in the Purchase or Pre-Authorization; for Vault transactions, use Purchase with Vault or Pre-Authorization with Vault

When completing the transaction with a Pre-Authorization Completion, or when doing a Purchase Correction or Refund, as in the rest of the Unified API, the previous transactions are referenced using the **order ID** and **transaction number**, or for Vault transactions, using the **data key**.

**NOTE:** Independent Refund transactions do not support Installments by Visa

## 6.4 Installment Plan Lookup

Used to obtain information required to do financial transactions with Installments by Visa.

### Installment Plan Lookup transaction object definition

installmentLookup

**Core connection object fields (all API transactions)**

| Variable Name | Type and Limits      | Description |
|---------------|----------------------|-------------|
| store ID      | <i>String</i><br>N/A | store_id    |
| API token     | <i>String</i><br>N/A | api_token   |

**Installment Plan Lookup transaction request fields – Required**

| Variable Name      | Type and Limits  | Description |
|--------------------|--|-------------|
| order ID           | <i>String</i><br>50-character alphanumeric<br>a-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces   | order_id    |
| amount             | <i>String</i><br>10-character decimal<br>Up to 7 digits (dollars) + decimal point (.) + 2 digits (cents) after the decimal point<br><div>EXAMPLE: 1234567.89</div> | amount      |
| credit card number | <i>String</i><br>max 20-character alphanumeric   | pan         |
| expiry date        | <i>String</i><br>4-character alphanumeric<br>YYMM  | expdate     |

## 6.5 Vault Installment Plan Lookup

Used to obtain information required to do financial transactions with installments when using a token stored in the Moneris Vault.

### Vault Installment Plan Lookup transaction object definition

resInstallmentLookup

#### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description |
|---------------|-----------------|-------------|
| store ID      | String<br>N/A   | store_id    |
| API token     | String<br>N/A   | api_token   |

#### Vault Installment Plan Lookup transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name | Type and Limits   | Description |
|---------------|---|-------------|
| order ID      | String<br>50-character alphanumeric<br>a-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces   | order_id    |
| amount        | String<br>10-character decimal<br>Up to 7 digits (dollars) + decimal point (.) + 2 digits (cents) after the decimal point<br><div>EXAMPLE: 1234567.89</div> | amount      |
| data key      | String<br>25-character alphanumeric   | data_key    |
| expiry date   | String<br>4-character alphanumeric  | expdate     |

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits | Description |
|---|-----------------|-------------|
| <b>NOTE:</b> Only send this field if using a temporary token; if not, omit this field | YYMM            |             |
|   |                 |             |

## 6.6 Installment Info Object

When sending Purchase or Pre-Authorization transactions with Installments by Visa, the Installment Info object is included in the request. The Installment Info object uses information received in the response to the Installment Plan Lookup transaction.

For a full list of definitions of the request and response fields see B.1 Definition of Response Fields – Installments by Visa

### Installment Info object request fields

| Variable Name                | Type and Limits   | Description |
|------------------------------|---|-------------|
| installment plan ID          | <i>String</i><br>36-character alphanumeric<br>fixed length                      | plan_id     |
| installment plan reference   | <i>String</i><br>10-character alphanumeric<br>fixed length                      | plan_id_ref |
| terms and conditions version | <i>String</i><br>10-character alphanumeric<br>variable length (1-10 characters) | tac_version |

**WARNING:** Do not send the Installment Info object on any transaction that is not intended to offer Installments by Visa functionality; doing so may cause the transaction to fail.

## 7 Multi-Currency Pricing (MCP)

- 7.1 About Multi-Currency Pricing (MCP)
- 7.2 Methods of Processing MCP Transactions
- 7.3 Multi-Currency Pricing (MCP) Request DTD
- 7.4 Multi-Currency Pricing (MCP) Response DTD
- 7.5 MCP Purchase
- 7.6 MCP Purchase with 3-D Secure
- 7.7 MCP Purchase with 3-D Secure and Vault
- 7.8 MCP Pre-Authorization
- 7.9 MCP Pre-Authorization with 3-D Secure
- 7.10 MCP Pre-Authorization with 3-D Secure and Vault
- 7.11 MCP Pre-Authorization Completion
- 7.12 MCP Purchase Correction
- 7.13 MCP Refund
- 7.14 MCP Independent Refund
- 7.15 MCP Purchase With Vault
- 7.16 MCP Pre-Authorization With Vault
- 7.17 MCP Independent Refund with Vault
- 7.18 MCP Get Rate
- 7.19 MCP Currency Codes
- 7.20 MCP Error Codes

### 7.1 About Multi-Currency Pricing (MCP)

Multi-currency pricing (MCP) is a financial service which allows businesses to price goods and services in a variety of foreign currencies, while continuing to receive settlement and reporting in Canadian dollars. MCP allows cardholders to shop, view prices and pay in the currency of their choice.

MCP is only available when processing Visa and Mastercard transactions.

**NOTE:** Use MCP only when processing transactions that involve foreign currency exchange; for transactions strictly in Canadian dollars, use the basic financial transaction requests

## 7.2 Methods of Processing MCP Transactions

There are two methods of processing multi-currency pricing transactions via the Moneris Gateway:

1. **Using the MCP Get Rate transaction** – this method is used to obtain a foreign exchange rate and locks that specific rate in for a limited time, and is applied in a subsequent transaction
2. **Without using MCP Get Rate** – this method sends a MCP transaction without performing the Get Rate request, and the foreign exchange rate is obtained at processing time

## 7.3 Multi-Currency Pricing (MCP) Request DTD

```
<!--The following are the Multi-currency transactions (MCP) -->

<!ELEMENT mcp_completion (order_id, txn_number, crypt_type, cust_id, dynamic_descriptor?,
ship_indicator?, mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_currency_code, mcp_rate_token?) >

<!ELEMENT mcp_ind_refund (order_id, cust_id, pan, expdate, crypt_type, dynamic_descriptor?,
mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_currency_code, mcp_rate_token?)>

<!ELEMENT mcp_preauth (order_id, cust_id, pan, expdate, crypt_type, dynamic_descriptor?,
wallet_indicator?, market_indicator?, cm_id?, mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_
currency_code, mcp_rate_token?)>

<!ELEMENT mcp_purchase (order_id, cust_id, pan, expdate, crypt_type, dynamic_descriptor?,
wallet_indicator?, market_indicator?, cm_id?, mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_
currency_code, mcp_rate_token?)>

<!ELEMENT mcp_purchasecorrection (order_id, txn_number, crypt_type, cust_id)>

<!ELEMENT mcp_refund (order_id, amount, txn_number, crypt_type, cust_id, dynamic_descriptor?,
mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_currency_code, mcp_rate_token?)>

<!ELEMENT mcp_res_ind_refund_cc (data_key, order_id, cust_id, crypt_type, dynamic_descriptor?,
mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_currency_code, mcp_rate_token?)>

<!ELEMENT mcp_res_preauth_cc (data_key, order_id, cust_id, crypt_type, dynamic_descriptor?,
expdate?, mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_currency_code, mcp_rate_token?)>

<!ELEMENT mcp_res_purchase_cc (data_key, order_id, cust_id, crypt_type, dynamic_descriptor?,
expdate?, mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_currency_code, mcp_rate_token?)>

<!ELEMENT mcp_get_rate (mcp_version, rate_txn_type, rate_info)>
<!--NOTE: threads_version and threads_server_trans_id are mandatory for 3DS Version 2.0+ -->

<!ELEMENT mcp_cavv_preauth (order_id, cust_id?, amount, pan, expdate, cavv, crypt_type?,
dynamic_descriptor?, wallet_indicator?, threads_version, threads_server_trans_id, cust_info?,
avs_info?, cvd_info?, cof_info?, ds_trans_id?, mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_
currency_code, mcp_rate_token?)>
```

```

<!ELEMENT mcp_cavv_purchase (order_id, cust_id?, amount, pan, expdate, cavv, crypt_type?,
dynamic_descriptor?, wallet_indicator?, threads_version, threads_server_trans_id, cust_info?,
avs_info?, cvd_info?, recur?, cof_info?, ds_trans_id?, mcp_version, cardholder_amount,
cardholder_currency_code, mcp_rate_token?)>

<!ELEMENT mcp_cavv_res_preauth_cc (data_key, order_id, cust_id, crypt_type, dynamic_
descriptor?, expdate?, mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_currency_code, mcp_rate_
token?, threads_version, threads_server_trans_id, ds_trans_id?)>

<!ELEMENT mcp_cavv_res_purchase_cc (data_key, order_id, cust_id, crypt_type, dynamic_
descriptor?, expdate?, mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_currency_code, mcp_rate_
token?, threads_version, threads_server_trans_id, ds_trans_id?)>

```

## 7.4 Multi-Currency Pricing (MCP) Response DTD

```

<!ELEMENT Rate (CardholderCurrencyCode, CardholderAmount, MerchantSettlementCurrency,
MerchantSettlementAmount, MCPRate, MCPErrorStatusCode, MCPErrorMessage)>
<!ELEMENT MCPRateToken (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT RateTxnType (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT RateInqStartTime (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT RateInqEndTime (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT RateValidityStartTime (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT RateValidityEndTime (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT RateValidityPeriod (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT CardholderCurrencyCode (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT CardholderAmount (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT MerchantSettlementCurrency (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT MerchantSettlementAmount (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT MCPRate (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT MCPErrorStatusCode (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT MCPErrorMessage (#PCDATA)>

```

## 7.5 MCP Purchase

Verifies funds on the customer's card, removes the funds and prepares them for deposit into the merchant's account.

This transaction request is the multi-currency pricing (MCP) enabled version of the equivalent financial transaction.

### XML transaction object

```
<mcp_purchase>
```

### MCP Purchasetransaction object definition

```

<!ELEMENT mcp_purchase (order_id, cust_id, pan, expdate, crypt_type, dynamic_
descriptor?, wallet_indicator?, market_indicator?, cm_id?, mcp_version,
cardholder_amount, cardholder_currency_code, mcp_rate_token?)>

```

### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description                           |
|---------------|-----------------|---------------------------------------|
| store ID      | <i>String</i>   | Unique identifier provided by Moneris |



| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
| <store_id>    | N/A             | upon merchant account setup   |
| API token     | <i>String</i>   | Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation<br><br>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:<br><br>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a><br><br>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a> |
| <api_token>   | N/A             |   |

### Optional connection object field

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits                  | Description  |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|--|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br><br>true/false | Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully<br><br>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required |

### MCP Purchase transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name          | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|------------------------|--|--|
| order ID<br><order_id> | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alphanumeric<br>a-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces | Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may |

| Variable Name                                 | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|---|--|---|
|   |  | <p>have the same order ID.</p> <p>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction.</p>   |
| customer ID<br><cust_id>                      | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>50-character alphanumeric</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b><br/>Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>&lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \</p> </div> | <p>Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier</p> <p>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center</p>   |
| credit card number<br><pan>                   | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>max 20-character alphanumeric</p>  | <p>Credit card number, usually 16 digits —field can be maximum 20 digits in support of future expansion of card number ranges.</p> <p>Carries the token for network tokenization transactions.</p>  |
| expiry date<br><expdate>                      | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>4-character alphanumeric</p> <p>YYMM</p>   | <p>Expiry date of the credit card, in YYMM format.</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This is the reverse of the MMY date format that is presented on the card.</p> </div>   |
| electronic commerce indicator<br><crypt_type> | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>1-character alphanumeric</p>   | <p>Describes the category of e-commerce transaction being processed. Allowable values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Single</li> <li>2 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Recurring</li> <li>3 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Instalment</li> <li>4 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Unknown classification</li> <li>5 – Authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</li> </ul> |

| Variable Name  | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|--|--|--|
|  |  | <p>6 – Non-authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</p> <p>7 – SSL-enabled merchant</p> <p><b>In Credential on File transactions where the request field e-commerce indicator is also being sent:</b> the allowable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for <b>payment indicator</b>, as follows:</p> <p>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = U, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> |
| MCP version number<br><mcp_version>                    | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>numeric</p> <p>current version is 1.0</p>                                  | Release version number for MCP   |
| cardholder amount<br><cardholder_amount>               | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>12-character numeric</p> <p>smallest discrete unit of foreign currency</p> | Amount, in units of foreign currency, the cardholder will be charged on the transaction  |
| cardholder currency code<br><cardholder_currency_code> | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>3-character numeric</p>  | ISO code representing the foreign currency of the cardholder   |

#### MCP Purchase transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name      | Type and Limits | Description                          |
|--------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------------|
| dynamic descriptor | <i>String</i>   | Merchant-defined description sent on |

| Variable Name        | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|----------------------|--|---|
| <dynamic_descriptor> | <p>20-character alphanumeric total of 22 characters including your merchant name and separator</p> <div> <b>NOTE:</b><br/>           Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>           &lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \         </div> | <p>a per-transaction basis that will appear on the credit card statement appended to the merchant's business name</p> <p>Dependent on the card issuer, the statement will typically show the dynamic descriptor appended to the merchant's existing business name separated by the "/" character; additional characters will be truncated</p> <div> <b>NOTE:</b> The 22-character maximum limit must take the "/" into account as one of the characters         </div> <p><b>For Pre-Authorization transactions:</b> the value in the dynamic descriptor field will only be carried over to a Pre-Authorization Completion when executing the latter via the Merchant Resource Center; otherwise, the value for dynamic descriptor must be sent again in the Pre-Authorization Completion</p> |
| wallet indicator     | <i>String</i>  |   |
| <wallet_indicator>   | 3-character alphanumeric   | <p>Indicates when a card number has been collected via a digital wallet, such as in Apple Pay, Google Pay™, Visa Checkout and Mastercard MasterPass, or via network tokenization from the card brand.</p> <p>Required for Apple Pay, Google Pay™ transactions whereby you are using your own API to decrypt the payload</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <p>APP –Apple Pay In-App</p> <p>APW – Apple Pay on the Web</p>  |

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits                                       | Description  |
|---|---|--|
|   |   | <p>GPP – Google Pay™ In-App</p> <p>GPW – Google Pay™ Web</p> <p>VCO – Visa Checkout</p> <p>MMP – Mastercard MasterPass</p>   |
|   |   | <p><b>NOTE:</b> Please note that if this field is included to indicate Apple Pay or Google Pay™, then Convenience Fee is not supported.</p>  |
|   |   | <p><b>NOTE:</b> Network tokenization wallet indicators are not in the API call but are in the merchant resource centre (MRC).</p>  |
| <p>market indicator</p> <p>&lt;market_indicator&gt;</p> | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>1-character alphabetic</p>    | <p>Optional field used by B2B merchants when paying invoices using straight-through processing in order to qualify for lower interchange fees</p> <p>Allowable value is always: J</p>                                    |
| <p>card match ID</p> <p>&lt;cm_id&gt;</p>               | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>50-character alphanumeric</p> | <p>Applies to Offlinx™ only</p>  |
| <p>MCP rate token</p> <p>&lt;mcp_rate_token&gt;</p>     | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>N/A</p>                       | <p>Token representing a temporarily locked-in foreign exchange rate, obtained in the response of the MCP Get Rate transaction and used in subsequent MCP financial transaction requests in order to redeem that rate</p> |

## 7.6 MCP Purchase with 3-D Secure

### XML transaction object

<mcpCavvPurchase>

**MCP Purchase with 3-D Secure transaction object definition**

```
<!ELEMENT mcp_cavv_purchase (order_id, cust_id?, amount, pan, expdate, cavv,
crypt_type?, dynamic_descriptor?, wallet_indicator?, threeds_version, threeds_
server_trans_id, cust_info?, avs_info?, cvd_info?, recur?, cof_info?, ds_
trans_id?, mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_currency_code, mcp_rate_
token?)>
```

**Core connection object fields (all API transactions)**

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits      | Description  |
|--------------------------|----------------------|--|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | <i>String</i><br>N/A | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup  |
| API token<br><api_token> | <i>String</i><br>N/A | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

**Optional connection object field**

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits              | Description  |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required</p> </div> |

**MCP Purchase with 3-D Secure transaction request fields – Required**

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|---|--|---|
| order ID<br><order_id>  | <i>String</i><br>50-character alphanumeric<br>a-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces   | Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.<br><br>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction. |
| customer ID<br><cust_id>                                      | <i>String</i><br>50-character alphanumeric<br><br><b>NOTE:</b><br>Some special characters are not allowed:<br>< > \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \ | Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier<br><br>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center  |
| credit card number<br><pan>                                   | <i>String</i><br>max 20-character alphanumeric   | Credit card number, usually 16 digits —field can be maximum 20 digits in support of future expansion of card number ranges.<br><br>Carries the token for network tokenization transactions.   |
| expiry date<br><expdate>                                      | <i>String</i><br>4-character alphanumeric<br><br>YYMM  | Expiry date of the credit card, in YYMM format.<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> This is the reverse of the MMYM date format that is presented on the card.  |
| Cardholder Authentication Verification Value (CAVV)<br><cavv> | <i>String</i><br>50-character alphanumeric   | Value provided by the Moneris MPI or by a third-party MPI<br><br>Sent in all 3-D Secure transactions, including Verified By Visa, MasterCard SecureCode, American Express SafeKey   |

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits                        | Description   |
|---|--|---|
|   |  | For Purchase and Pre-Authorization transactions with 3-D Secure for Apple Pay and Google Pay, the CAVV field contains the decrypted cryptogram  |
| 3DS version<br><br><threeds_version>  | String<br><br>10-character numeric     | Acceptable values:<br><br>2.0.0 = 3DS protocol 2.0.0<br><br>2.1.0 = 3DS protocol 2.1.0<br><br>2.2.0 = 3DS protocol 2.2.0<br><br>2.3.0 = 3DS protocol 2.3.0  |
| <b>NOTE:</b> Mandatory for financial transactions using 3rd Party 3-D Secure services.  |  |   |
| 3DS server transaction ID<br><br><threeds_server_trans_id>  | String<br><br>36-character numeric     | Data is obtained from a Cavv Lookup Request or MPI 3DS Authentication Request transaction   |
| <b>NOTE:</b> Mandatory for financial transactions using 3rd Party 3-D Secure services - obtained from the Cavv Lookup request or MPI 3DS Authentication request |  |   |
| electronic commerce indicator<br><br><crypt_type>   | String<br><br>1-character alphanumeric | Describes the category of e-commerce transaction being processed. Allowable values are:<br><br>1 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Single<br><br>2 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Recurring<br><br>3 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Instalment<br><br>4 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Unknown classification<br><br>5 – Authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)<br><br>6 – Non-authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)<br><br>7 – SSL-enabled merchant<br><br><b>In Credential on File transactions</b> |



| Variable Name  | Type and Limits   | Description  |
|--|---|--|
|  |   | <p>where the request field <b>e-commerce indicator</b> is also being sent: the allowable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for <b>payment indicator</b>, as follows:</p> <p>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = U, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> |
| MCP version number<br><mcp_version>                    | <i>String</i><br>numeric<br>current version is 1.0                                  | Release version number for MCP   |
| cardholder amount<br><cardholder_amount>               | <i>String</i><br>12-character numeric<br>smallest discrete unit of foreign currency | Amount, in units of foreign currency, the cardholder will be charged on the transaction  |
| cardholder currency code<br><cardholder_currency_code> | <i>String</i><br>3-character numeric  | ISO code representing the foreign currency of the cardholder   |

### MCP Purchase with 3-D Secure transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name                              | Type and Limits   | Description   |
|--|---|---|
| dynamic descriptor<br><dynamic_descriptor> | <i>String</i><br>20-character alphanumeric<br>total of 22 characters including your merchant name | Merchant-defined description sent on a per-transaction basis that will appear on the credit card statement appended to the merchant's business name |

| Variable Name      | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|--------------------|--|--|
|                    | and separator<br><br><div> <b>NOTE:</b><br/>           Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>           &lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \         </div> | Dependent on the card issuer, the statement will typically show the dynamic descriptor appended to the merchant's existing business name separated by the "/" character; additional characters will be truncated<br><br><div> <b>NOTE:</b> The 22-character maximum limit must take the "/" into account as one of the characters         </div>   |
| wallet indicator   | String   |  |
| <wallet_indicator> | 3-character alphanumeric   | Indicates when a card number has been collected via a digital wallet, such as in Apple Pay, Google Pay™, Visa Checkout and Mastercard MasterPass, or via network tokenization from the card brand.<br><br>Required for Apple Pay, Google Pay™ transactions whereby you are using your own API to decrypt the payload<br><br>Possible values:<br><br>APP – Apple Pay In-App<br><br>APW – Apple Pay on the Web<br><br>GPP – Google Pay™ In-App<br><br>GPW – Google Pay™ Web<br><br>VCO – Visa Checkout<br><br>MMP – Mastercard MasterPass<br><br><div> <b>NOTE:</b> Please note that if this field is included to indicate Apple Pay or Google Pay™, then Convenience Fee is not supported.         </div> |

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---|-----------------|---|
| <div> <b>NOTE:</b> Network tokenization wallet indicators are not in the API call but are in the merchant resource centre (MRC). </div>   |                 |   |
| MCP rate token<br><mcp_rate_token>  | String<br>N/A   | Token representing a temporarily locked-in foreign exchange rate, obtained in the response of the MCP Get Rate transaction and used in subsequent MCP financial transaction requests in order to redeem that rate |
| Customer Information<br><cust_info>   | Object<br>N/A   | Contains fields that describe miscellaneous customer information, billing and shipping information, and item information  |
| AVS Information<br><avs_info>   | Object<br>N/A   | Contains fields applying to the Address Verification Service (AVS) e-fraud tool   |
| CVD Information<br><cvd_info>   | Object<br>N/A   | Contains fields related to the Card Validation Digits e-fraud tool  |
| Credential on File Info<br><cof_info>   | Object<br>N/A   | Required when storing cardholder credentials or using these credentials in subsequent transactions.   |
| <div> <b>NOTE:</b> This is a nested object within the transaction, and required when storing or using the customer's stored credentials. For information about fields in the Credential on File Info object, see Credential on File Info Object and Variables. </div> |                 |   |
| Recurring Billing<br><recur>  | Object<br>N/A   | Contains fields related to Recurring Billing  |
| DS transaction ID   | String          | Refers to the DSTransID in the response of the previous 3DS authentication  |

| Variable Name  | Type and Limits           | Description |
|--|---------------------------|-------------|
| <code>&lt;ds_trans_id&gt;</code><br><br><div> <b>NOTE:</b> Only used in financial transactions using 3rd Party 3-D Secure services. </div> | 36-character alphanumeric | tication.   |

## 7.7 MCP Purchase with 3-D Secure and Vault

### XML transaction object

`<mcpResCavvPurchaseCC>`

### MCP Purchase with 3-D Secure and Vault transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT mcp_cavv_res_purchase_cc (data_key, order_id, cust_id, crypt_type,
dynamic_descriptor?, expdate?, mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_
currency_code, mcp_rate_token?, threeds_version, threeds_server_trans_id, ds_
trans_id?)>
```

### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name                               | Type and Limits      | Description  |
|---|----------------------|--|
| store ID<br><code>&lt;store_id&gt;</code>   | <i>String</i><br>N/A | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup  |
| API token<br><code>&lt;api_token&gt;</code> | <i>String</i><br>N/A | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

**Optional connection object field**

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits                  | Description   |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|---|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br><br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required </div> |

**MCP Purchase with 3-D Secure and Vault transaction request fields – Required**

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|--------------------------|--|--|
| data key<br><data_key>   | <i>String</i><br><br>25-character alphanumeric                                     | <p>Unique identifier for a Vault profile, and used in future Vault financial transactions to associate a transaction with that profile</p> <p>Data key is generated by Moneris and returned to you in the Receipt object when the profile is first registered</p>  |
| order ID<br><order_id>   | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alphanumeric<br><br>a-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces | <p>Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.</p> <p>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction.</p> |
| customer ID<br><cust_id> | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alphanumeric                                     | Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier   |

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|---|--|---|
|   | <b>NOTE:</b><br>Some special characters are not allowed:<br>< > \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \ | Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center  |
| credit card number<br><pan>                                       | <i>String</i><br><br>max 20-character alphanumeric                                   | Credit card number, usually 16 digits —field can be maximum 20 digits in support of future expansion of card number ranges.<br><br>Carries the token for network tokenization transactions.   |
| Cardholder Authentication Verification Value (CAVV)<br><data_key> | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alphanumeric                                       | Value provided by the Moneris MPI or by a third-party MPI<br><br>Sent in all 3-D Secure transactions, including Verified By Visa, MasterCard SecureCode, American Express SafeKey<br><br>For Purchase and Pre-Authorization transactions with 3-D Secure for Apple Pay and Google Pay, the CAVV field contains the decrypted cryptogram   |
| electronic commerce indicator<br><crypt_type>                     | <i>String</i><br><br>1-character alphanumeric  | Describes the category of e-commerce transaction being processed. Allowable values are:<br><br>1 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Single<br><br>2 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Recurring<br><br>3 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Instalment<br><br>4 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Unknown classification<br><br>5 – Authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)<br><br>6 – Non-authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)<br><br>7 – SSL-enabled merchant<br><br><b>In Credential on File transactions</b> |

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits   | Description  |
|---|---|--|
|   |   | <p>where the request field <b>e-commerce indicator</b> is also being sent: the allowable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for <b>payment indicator</b>, as follows:</p> <p>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = U, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> |
| MCP version number<br><mcp_version>   | <i>String</i><br>numeric<br>current version is 1.0                                  | Release version number for MCP   |
| cardholder amount<br><cardholder_amount>  | <i>String</i><br>12-character numeric<br>smallest discrete unit of foreign currency | Amount, in units of foreign currency, the cardholder will be charged on the transaction  |
| cardholder currency code<br><cardholder_currency_code>  | <i>String</i><br>3-character numeric  | ISO code representing the foreign currency of the cardholder   |
| 3DS version<br><threeds_version>  | <i>String</i><br>10-character numeric   | Acceptable values:<br>2.0.0 = 3DS protocol 2.0.0<br>2.1.0 = 3DS protocol 2.1.0<br>2.2.0 = 3DS protocol 2.2.0<br>2.3.0 = 3DS protocol 2.3.0   |
| <div> <b>NOTE:</b> Mandatory for financial transactions using 3rd Party 3-D Secure services. </div> |   |  |
| 3DS server transaction ID   | <i>String</i>   | Data is obtained from a Cavv Lookup  |

| Variable Name  | Type and Limits      | Description   |
|--|----------------------|---|
| <code>&lt;threads_server_trans_id&gt;</code><br><br><div> <b>NOTE:</b> Mandatory for financial transactions using 3rd Party 3-D Secure services - obtained from the Cavv Lookup request or MPI 3DS Authentication request </div> | 36-character numeric | Request or MPI 3DS Authentication Request transaction |

### MCP Purchase with 3-D Secure and Vault transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits   | Description   |
|---|---|---|
| dynamic descriptor<br><code>&lt;dynamic_descriptor&gt;</code> | <i>String</i><br><br>20-character alphanumeric<br><br>total of 22 characters including your merchant name and separator<br><br><div> <b>NOTE:</b><br/> Some special characters are not allowed:<br/> <code>&lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \</code> </div> | Merchant-defined description sent on a per-transaction basis that will appear on the credit card statement appended to the merchant's business name<br><br>Dependent on the card issuer, the statement will typically show the dynamic descriptor appended to the merchant's existing business name separated by the "/" character; additional characters will be truncated<br><br><div> <b>NOTE:</b> The 22-character maximum limit must take the "/" into account as one of the characters </div> |
| expiry date<br><code>&lt;expdate&gt;</code>                   | <i>String</i><br><br>4-character alphanumeric<br><br>YYMM   | Expiry date of the credit card, in YYMM format.<br><br><div> <b>NOTE:</b> This is the reverse of the MMY date format that is presented on the card. </div>  |
| MCP rate token<br><code>&lt;mcp_rate_token&gt;</code>         | <i>String</i><br><br>N/A  | Token representing a temporarily locked-in foreign exchange rate, obtained in the response of the MCP Get Rate transaction and used in  |



| Variable Name   | Type and Limits                     | Description   |
|---|-------------------------------------|---|
|   |                                     | subsequent MCP financial transaction requests in order to redeem that rate  |
| DS transaction ID<br><ds_trans_id>  | String<br>36-character alphanumeric | Refers to the DSTransID in the response of the previous 3DS authentication. |
| <b>NOTE:</b> Only used in financial transactions using 3rd Party 3-D Secure services. |                                     |   |

## 7.8 MCP Pre-Authorization

Verifies and locks funds on the customer's credit card. The funds are locked for a specified amount of time based on the card issuer.

To retrieve the funds that have been locked by a Pre-Authorization transaction so that they may be settled in the merchant's account, a Pre-Authorization Completion transaction must be performed. A Pre-Authorization transaction may only be "completed" once.

This transaction request is the multi-currency pricing (MCP) enabled version of the equivalent financial transaction.

### XML transaction object

```
<mcp_preauth>
```

### MCP Pre-Authorization transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT mcp_preauth (order_id, cust_id, pan, expdate, crypt_type, dynamic_descriptor?, wallet_indicator?, market_indicator?, cm_id?, mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_currency_code, mcp_rate_token?)>
```

### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits | Description   |
|--------------------------|-----------------|---|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | String<br>N/A   | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup               |
| API token<br><api_token> | String<br>N/A   | Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
|               |                 | <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

### Optional connection object field

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits                  | Description  |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|--|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br><br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required</p> </div> |

### MCP Pre-Authorization transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name          | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|------------------------|--|--|
| order ID<br><order_id> | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alphanumeric<br>a-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces | <p>Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.</p> <p>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction.</p> |

| Variable Name                                 | Type and Limits   | Description   |
|---|---|---|
| customer ID<br><cust_id>                      | <i>String</i><br>50-character alphanumeric<br><div> <b>NOTE:</b><br/>           Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>           &lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \         </div> | Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier<br><br>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center  |
| credit card number<br><pan>                   | <i>String</i><br>max 20-character alphanumeric  | Credit card number, usually 16 digits—field can be maximum 20 digits in support of future expansion of card number ranges.<br><br>Carries the token for network tokenization transactions.  |
| expiry date<br><expdate>                      | <i>String</i><br>4-character alphanumeric<br>YYMM   | Expiry date of the credit card, in YYMM format.<br><br><div> <b>NOTE:</b> This is the reverse of the MMYM date format that is presented on the card.         </div>   |
| electronic commerce indicator<br><crypt_type> | <i>String</i><br>1-character alphanumeric   | Describes the category of e-commerce transaction being processed. Allowable values are:<br><br>1 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Single<br>2 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Recurring<br>3 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Instalment<br>4 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Unknown classification<br>5 – Authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)<br>6 – Non-authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)<br>7 – SSL-enabled merchant<br><br><b>In Credential on File transactions where the request field e-commerce indicator is also being sent:</b> the allow- |

| Variable Name  | Type and Limits   | Description   |
|--|---|---|
|  |   | <p>able values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for <b>payment indicator</b>, as follows:</p> <p>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = U, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> |
| MCP version number<br><mcp_version>                    | <i>String</i><br><br>numeric<br><br>current version is 1.0                                  | Release version number for MCP  |
| cardholder amount<br><cardholder_amount>               | <i>String</i><br><br>12-character numeric<br><br>smallest discrete unit of foreign currency | Amount, in units of foreign currency, the cardholder will be charged on the transaction   |
| cardholder currency code<br><cardholder_currency_code> | <i>String</i><br><br>3-character numeric  | ISO code representing the foreign currency of the cardholder  |

#### MCP Pre-Authorization transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name                              | Type and Limits   | Description   |
|--|---|---|
| dynamic descriptor<br><dynamic_descriptor> | <i>String</i><br><br>20-character alphanumeric<br><br>total of 22 characters including your merchant name and separator | <p>Merchant-defined description sent on a per-transaction basis that will appear on the credit card statement appended to the merchant's business name</p> <p>Dependent on the card issuer, the statement will typically show the</p> |

| Variable Name      | Type and Limits   | Description   |
|--------------------|---|---|
|                    | <p><b>NOTE:</b><br/>Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>&lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \</p> | <p>dynamic descriptor appended to the merchant's existing business name separated by the "/" character; additional characters will be truncated</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The 22-character maximum limit must take the "/" into account as one of the characters</p> <p><b>For Pre-Authorization transactions:</b> the value in the dynamic descriptor field will only be carried over to a Pre-Authorization Completion when executing the latter via the Merchant Resource Center; otherwise, the value for dynamic descriptor must be sent again in the Pre-Authorization Completion</p> |
| wallet indicator   | String  |   |
| <wallet_indicator> | 3-character alphanumeric  | <p>Indicates when a card number has been collected via a digital wallet, such as in Apple Pay, Google Pay™, Visa Checkout and Mastercard MasterPass, or via network tokenization from the card brand.</p> <p>Required for Apple Pay, Google Pay™ transactions whereby you are using your own API to decrypt the payload</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <p>APP – Apple Pay In-App</p> <p>APW – Apple Pay on the Web</p> <p>GPP – Google Pay™ In-App</p> <p>GPW – Google Pay™ Web</p> <p>VCO – Visa Checkout</p> <p>MMP – Mastercard MasterPass</p>  |

| Variable Name                          | Type and Limits                     | Description   |
|--|-------------------------------------|---|
|  |                                     | <p><b>NOTE:</b> Please note that if this field is included to indicate Apple Pay or Google Pay™, then Convenience Fee is not supported.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Network tokenization wallet indicators are not in the API call but are in the merchant resource centre (MRC).</p> |
| market indicator<br><market_indicator> | String<br>1-character alphabetic    | Optional field used by B2B merchants when paying invoices using straight-through processing in order to qualify for lower interchange fees<br><br>Allowable value is always: J  |
| card match ID<br><cm_id>               | String<br>50-character alphanumeric | Applies to Offlinx™ only  |
| MCP rate token<br><mcp_rate_token>     | String<br>N/A                       | Token representing a temporarily locked-in foreign exchange rate, obtained in the response of the MCP Get Rate transaction and used in subsequent MCP financial transaction requests in order to redeem that rate   |

## 7.9 MCP Pre-Authorization with 3-D Secure

### XML transaction object

<mcpCavvPreauth>

#### MCP Pre-Authorization with 3-D Secure transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT mcp_cavv_preauth (order_id , cust_id?, amount, pan, expdate, cavv, crypt_type?, dynamic_descriptor?, wallet_indicator?, threeds_version, threeds_server_trans_id, cust_info?, avs_info?, cvd_info?, cof_info?, ds_trans_id?, mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_currency_code, mcp_rate_token?)>
```

**Core connection object fields (all API transactions)**

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits      | Description  |
|--------------------------|----------------------|--|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | <i>String</i><br>N/A | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup  |
| API token<br><api_token> | <i>String</i><br>N/A | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

**Optional connection object field**

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits              | Description  |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required</p> </div> |

**MCP Pre-Authorization with 3-D Secure transaction request fields – Required**

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
| order ID      | <i>String</i>   | Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every |

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits   | Description   |
|---|---|---|
| <order_id>  | 50-character alphanumeric<br>a-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces   | Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.<br><br>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction.   |
| customer ID<br><cust_id>                                      | String<br>50-character alphanumeric<br><br><b>NOTE:</b><br>Some special characters are not allowed:<br>< > \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \ | Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier<br><br>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center  |
| expiry date<br><expdate>                                      | String<br>4-character alphanumeric<br>YYMM  | Expiry date of the credit card, in YYMM format.<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> This is the reverse of the MMY date format that is presented on the card.   |
| Cardholder Authentication Verification Value (CAVV)<br><cavv> | String<br>50-character alphanumeric   | Value provided by the Moneris MPI or by a third-party MPI<br><br>Sent in all 3-D Secure transactions, including Verified By Visa, MasterCard SecureCode, American Express SafeKey<br><br>For Purchase and Pre-Authorization transactions with 3-D Secure for Apple Pay and Google Pay, the CAVV field contains the decrypted cryptogram |
| electronic commerce indicator<br><crypt_type>                 | String<br>1-character alphanumeric  | Describes the category of e-commerce transaction being processed. Allowable values are:<br><br>1 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Single  |



| Variable Name  | Type and Limits   | Description   |
|--|---|---|
|  |   | <p>2 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Recurring</p> <p>3 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Instalment</p> <p>4 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Unknown classification</p> <p>5 – Authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</p> <p>6 – Non-authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</p> <p>7 – SSL-enabled merchant</p> <p><b>In Credential on File transactions where the request field e-commerce indicator is also being sent:</b> the allowable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for <b>payment indicator</b>, as follows:</p> <p>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = U, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> |
| cardholder amount<br><cardholder_amount>               | <i>String</i><br>12-character numeric<br>smallest discrete unit of foreign currency | Amount, in units of foreign currency, the cardholder will be charged on the transaction   |
| cardholder currency code<br><cardholder_currency_code> | <i>String</i><br>3-character numeric  | ISO code representing the foreign currency of the cardholder  |
| 3DS version<br><threeds_version>                       | <i>String</i><br>10-character numeric   | Acceptable values:<br>2.0.0 = 3DS protocol 2.0.0  |

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits                           | Description   |
|---|---|---|
| <b>NOTE:</b> Mandatory for financial transactions using 3rd Party 3-D Secure services.  |   | 2.1.0 = 3DS protocol 2.1.0  |
|   |   | 2.2.0 = 3DS protocol 2.2.0  |
|   |   | 2.3.0 = 3DS protocol 2.3.0  |
| 3DS server transaction ID<br><threads_server_trans_id>  | <i>String</i><br><br>36-character numeric | Data is obtained from a Cavv Lookup Request or MPI 3DS Authentication Request transaction |
| <b>NOTE:</b> Mandatory for financial transactions using 3rd Party 3-D Secure services - obtained from the Cavv Lookup request or MPI 3DS Authentication request |   |   |

### MCP Pre-Authorization with 3-D Secure transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name                              | Type and Limits   | Description  |
|--|---|--|
| dynamic descriptor<br><dynamic_descriptor> | <i>String</i><br><br>20-character alphanumeric<br><br>total of 22 characters including your merchant name and separator<br><br><b>NOTE:</b><br>Some special characters are not allowed:<br>< > \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \ | Merchant-defined description sent on a per-transaction basis that will appear on the credit card statement appended to the merchant's business name<br><br>Dependent on the card issuer, the statement will typically show the dynamic descriptor appended to the merchant's existing business name separated by the "/" character; additional characters will be truncated<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> The 22-character maximum limit must take the "/" into account as one of the characters |
| wallet indicator<br><br><wallet_indicator> | <i>String</i><br><br>3-character alphanumeric   | Indicates when a card number has been collected via a digital wallet, such as in Apple Pay, Google Pay™,   |

| Variable Name                       | Type and Limits | Description  |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------|--|
|                                     |                 | <p>Visa Checkout and Mastercard MasterPass, or via network tokenization from the card brand.</p> <p>Required for Apple Pay, Google Pay™ transactions whereby you are using your own API to decrypt the payload</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <p>APP – Apple Pay In-App</p> <p>APW – Apple Pay on the Web</p> <p>GPP – Google Pay™ In-App</p> <p>GPW – Google Pay™ Web</p> <p>VCO – Visa Checkout</p> <p>MMP – Mastercard MasterPass</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Please note that if this field is included to indicate Apple Pay or Google Pay™, then Convenience Fee is not supported.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Network tokenization wallet indicators are not in the API call but are in the merchant resource centre (MRC).</p> </div> |
| MCP rate token<br><mcp_rate_token>  | String<br>N/A   | Token representing a temporarily locked-in foreign exchange rate, obtained in the response of the MCP Get Rate transaction and used in subsequent MCP financial transaction requests in order to redeem that rate  |
| Customer Information<br><cust_info> | Object<br>N/A   | Contains fields that describe miscellaneous customer information, billing and shipping information, and item information   |

| Variable Name  | Type and Limits                     | Description   |
|--|-------------------------------------|---|
| AVS Information<br><avs_info>  | Object<br>N/A                       | Contains fields applying to the Address Verification Service (AVS) e-fraud tool                     |
| CVD Information<br><cvd_info>  | Object<br>N/A                       | Contains fields related to the Card Validation Digits e-fraud tool                                  |
| Credential on File Info<br><cof_info>  | Object<br>N/A                       | Required when storing cardholder credentials or using these credentials in subsequent transactions. |
| <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This is a nested object within the transaction, and required when storing or using the customer's stored credentials. For information about fields in the Credential on File Info object, see Credential on File Info Object and Variables.</p> </div> |                                     |   |
| DS transaction ID<br><ds_trans_id>   | String<br>36-character alphanumeric | Refers to the DSTransID in the response of the previous 3DS authentication.                         |
| <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Only used in financial transactions using 3rd Party 3-D Secure services.</p> </div>  |                                     |   |

## 7.10 MCP Pre-Authorization with 3-D Secure and Vault

### XML transaction object

<mcpResCavvPreauthCC>

### MCP Pre-Authorization with 3-D Secure and Vault transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT mcp_cavv_res_preauth_cc (data_key, order_id, cust_id, crypt_type,
dynamic_descriptor?, expdate?, mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_
currency_code, mcp_rate_token?, threads_version, threads_server_trans_id, ds_
trans_id?)>
```

**Core connection object fields (all API transactions)**

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits      | Description  |
|--------------------------|----------------------|--|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | <i>String</i><br>N/A | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup  |
| API token<br><api_token> | <i>String</i><br>N/A | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

**Optional connection object field**

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits              | Description  |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required</p> </div> |

**MCP Pre-Authorization with 3-D Secure and Vault transaction request fields – Required**

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
| data key      | <i>String</i>   | Unique identifier for a Vault profile, and used in future Vault financial |

| Variable Name               | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|-----------------------------|--|--|
| <data_key>                  | 25-character alphanumeric  | <p>transactions to associate a transaction with that profile</p> <p>Data key is generated by Moneris and returned to you in the Receipt object when the profile is first registered</p>  |
| order ID<br><order_id>      | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>50-character alphanumeric</p> <p>a-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces</p>  | <p>Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.</p> <p>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction.</p> |
| customer ID<br><cust_id>    | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>50-character alphanumeric</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b><br/>Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>&lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \</p> </div> | <p>Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier</p> <p>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center</p>  |
| credit card number<br><pan> | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>max 20-character alphanumeric</p>  | <p>Credit card number, usually 16 digits —field can be maximum 20 digits in support of future expansion of card number ranges.</p> <p>Carries the token for network tokenization transactions.</p>   |
| expiry date<br><expdate>    | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>4-character alphanumeric</p> <p>YYMM</p>   | <p>Expiry date of the credit card, in YYMM format.</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This is the reverse of the MMY date format that is presented on the card.</p> </div>  |
| Cardholder Authentication   | <i>String</i>  | Value provided by the Moneris MPI or   |

| Variable Name                                 | Type and Limits                           | Description  |
|---|---|--|
| Verification Value (CAVV)<br><cavv>           | 50-character alphanumeric                 | by a third-party MPI<br><br>Sent in all 3-D Secure transactions, including Verified By Visa, MasterCard SecureCode, American Express SafeKey<br><br>For Purchase and Pre-Authorization transactions with 3-D Secure for Apple Pay and Google Pay, the CAVV field contains the decrypted cryptogram   |
| electronic commerce indicator<br><crypt_type> | <i>String</i><br>1-character alphanumeric | Describes the category of e-commerce transaction being processed. Allowable values are:<br><br>1 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Single<br>2 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Recurring<br>3 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Instalment<br>4 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Unknown classification<br>5 – Authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)<br>6 – Non-authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)<br>7 – SSL-enabled merchant<br><br><b>In Credential on File transactions where the request field e-commerce indicator is also being sent:</b> the allowable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for <b>payment indicator</b> , as follows:<br><br>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6<br><br>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6<br><br>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7<br><br>if payment indicator = U, then allowable values |

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|---|--|--|
|   |  | for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7<br><br>if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7                             |
| MCP version number<br><mcp_version>   | String<br><br>numeric<br><br>current version is 1.0                                  | Release version number for MCP   |
| cardholder amount<br><cardholder_amount>  | String<br><br>12-character numeric<br><br>smallest discrete unit of foreign currency | Amount, in units of foreign currency, the cardholder will be charged on the transaction  |
| cardholder currency code<br><cardholder_currency_code>  | String<br><br>3-character numeric  | ISO code representing the foreign currency of the cardholder   |
| 3DS version<br><threeds_version><br><br><b>NOTE:</b> Mandatory for financial transactions using 3rd Party 3-D Secure services.  | String<br><br>10-character numeric   | Acceptable values:<br><br>2.0.0 = 3DS protocol 2.0.0<br><br>2.1.0 = 3DS protocol 2.1.0<br><br>2.2.0 = 3DS protocol 2.2.0<br><br>2.3.0 = 3DS protocol 2.3.0 |
| 3DS server transaction ID<br><threeds_server_trans_id><br><br><b>NOTE:</b> Mandatory for financial transactions using 3rd Party 3-D Secure services - obtained from the Cavv Lookup request or MPI 3DS Authentication request | String<br><br>36-character numeric   | Data is obtained from a Cavv Lookup Request or MPI 3DS Authentication Request transaction  |



**MCP Pre-Authorization with 3-D Secure and Vault transaction request fields – Optional**

| Variable Name                              | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|--|--|---|
| dynamic descriptor<br><dynamic_descriptor> | <i>String</i><br>20-character alphanumeric<br>total of 22 characters including your merchant name and separator<br><div> <b>NOTE:</b><br/>           Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>           &lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \         </div> | Merchant-defined description sent on a per-transaction basis that will appear on the credit card statement appended to the merchant's business name<br>Dependent on the card issuer, the statement will typically show the dynamic descriptor appended to the merchant's existing business name separated by the "/" character; additional characters will be truncated<br><div> <b>NOTE:</b> The 22-character maximum limit must take the "/" into account as one of the characters         </div> |
| expiry date<br><expdate>                   | <i>String</i><br>4-character alphanumeric<br>YYMM  | Expiry date of the credit card, in YYMM format. This is the reverse of the MMY Y date format that is presented on the card.   |
| MCP rate token<br><mcp_rate_token>         | <i>String</i><br>N/A   | Token representing a temporarily locked-in foreign exchange rate, obtained in the response of the MCP Get Rate transaction and used in subsequent MCP financial transaction requests in order to redeem that rate   |
| DS transaction ID<br><ds_trans_id>         | <i>String</i><br>36-character alphanumeric<br><div> <b>NOTE:</b> Only used in financial transactions using 3rd Party 3-D Secure services.         </div>   | Refers to the DSTransID in the response of the previous 3DS authentication.   |

## 7.11 MCP Pre-Authorization Completion

Retrieves funds that have been locked by an MCP Pre-Authorization transaction, and prepares them for settlement into the merchant's account.

This transaction request is the multi-currency pricing (MCP) enabled version of the equivalent financial transaction.

### XML transaction object

<mcp\_completion>

### MCP Pre-Authorization Completion transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT mcp_completion (order_id, txn_number, crypt_type, cust_id, dynamic_descriptor?, ship_indicator?, mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_currency_code, mcp_rate_token?) >
```

### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
| store ID      | <i>String</i>   | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup   |
| <store_id>    | N/A             |   |
| API token     | <i>String</i>   | Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation   |
| <api_token>   | N/A             |   |
|               |                 | To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs: |
|               |                 | Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a>  |
|               |                 | Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a>   |

### Optional connection object field

| Variable Name  | Type and Limits | Description   |
|----------------|-----------------|---|
| status check   | <i>Boolean</i>  | Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully |
| <status_check> | true/false      |   |
|                |                 | To send a status check request, resend                                  |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
|               |                 | <p>the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required </div> |

### MCP Pre-Authorization Completion transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name                                       | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|---|--|--|
| <p>order ID</p> <p>&lt;order_id&gt;</p>             | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>50-character alphanumeric</p> <p>a-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces</p>              | <p>Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.</p> <p>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction.</p>   |
| <p>transaction number</p> <p>&lt;txn_number&gt;</p> | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>255-character, alphanumeric, hyphens or underscores</p> <p>variable length</p> | <p>Used to reference the original transaction when performing a follow-on transaction (i.e., Pre-Authorization Completion, Purchase Correction or Refund)</p> <p>This value is returned in the response of the original transaction</p> <p>Pre-Authorization Completion: references a Pre-Authorization</p> <p>Refund/Purchase Correction: references a Purchase or Pre-Authorization Completion</p> |
| <p>electronic commerce indicator</p>                | <p><i>String</i></p>   | <p>Describes the category of e-commerce transaction being processed. Allow-</p>  |

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|--------------------------|--|--|
| <crypt_type>             | 1-character alphanumeric   | <p>able values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Single</li> <li>2 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Recurring</li> <li>3 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Instalment</li> <li>4 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Unknown classification</li> <li>5 – Authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</li> <li>6 – Non-authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</li> <li>7 – SSL-enabled merchant</li> </ul> <p><b>In Credential on File transactions where the request field e-commerce indicator is also being sent:</b> the allowable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for <b>payment indicator</b>, as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</li> <li>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</li> <li>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</li> <li>if payment indicator = U, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7</li> <li>if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</li> </ul> |
| customer ID<br><cust_id> | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>50-character alphanumeric</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b><br/>Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>&lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \</p> </div> | <p>Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier</p> <p>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center</p>  |
| MCP version number       | <i>String</i>  | Release version number for MCP   |

| Variable Name  | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|--|--|---|
| <mcp_version>  | numeric<br><br>current version is 1.0  |   |
| cardholder amount<br><br><cardholder_amount>               | String<br><br>12-character numeric<br><br>smallest discrete unit of foreign currency | Amount, in units of foreign currency, the cardholder will be charged on the transaction |
| cardholder currency code<br><br><cardholder_currency_code> | String<br><br>3-character numeric  | ISO code representing the foreign currency of the cardholder                            |

### MCP Pre-Authorization Completion transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name                                  | Type and Limits   | Description   |
|--|---|---|
| dynamic descriptor<br><br><dynamic_descriptor> | String<br><br>20-character alphanumeric<br><br>total of 22 characters including your merchant name and separator<br><br><div><b>NOTE:</b><br/>Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>&lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \</div> | Merchant-defined description sent on a per-transaction basis that will appear on the credit card statement appended to the merchant's business name<br><br>Dependent on the card issuer, the statement will typically show the dynamic descriptor appended to the merchant's existing business name separated by the "/" character; additional characters will be truncated<br><br><div><b>NOTE:</b> The 22-character maximum limit must take the "/" into account as one of the characters</div> |
| shipping indicator<br><br><ship_indicator>     | String<br><br>1-character alphanumeric  | Used to identify completion transactions that require multiple shipments, also referred to as multiple completions<br><br>By default, if shipping indicator is not sent, the Pre-Authorization Completion is listed as final  |

| Variable Name                      | Type and Limits | Description   |
|------------------------------------|-----------------|---|
|                                    |                 | <p>To indicate that the Pre-Authorization Completion is to be left open by the issuer as supplemental shipments or completions are pending, submit shipping indicator with a value of P</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <p>P – Partial</p> <p>F – Final</p> |
| MCP rate token<br><mcp_rate_token> | String<br>N/A   | Token representing a temporarily locked-in foreign exchange rate, obtained in the response of the MCP Get Rate transaction and used in subsequent MCP financial transaction requests in order to redeem that rate                                       |

## 7.12 MCP Purchase Correction

Restores the full amount of a previous MCP Purchase or MCP Pre-Authorization Completion transaction to the cardholder's card, and removes any record of it from the cardholder's statement.

This transaction can be used against a Purchase or Pre-Authorization Completion transaction that occurred same day provided that the batch containing the original transaction remains open.

MCP processing uses the automated closing feature, and Batch Close occurs daily between 10 and 11 pm Eastern Time.

### XML transaction object

<mcpurchasecorrection>

### MCP Purchase Correction transaction object definition

<!ELEMENT mcp\_purchase correction (order\_id, txn\_number, crypt\_type, cust\_id)>

### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name          | Type and Limits | Description   |
|------------------------|-----------------|---|
| store ID<br><store_id> | String<br>N/A   | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup |

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits | Description  |
|--------------------------|-----------------|--|
| API token<br><api_token> | String<br>N/A   | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

### Optional connection object field

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits       | Description  |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------|--|
| status check<br><status_check> | Boolean<br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required</p> </div> |

### MCP Purchase Correction transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name          | Type and Limits   | Description  |
|------------------------|---|--|
| order ID<br><order_id> | String<br>50-character alphanumeric<br>a-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces | Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID. |

| Variable Name                                 | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|---|--|---|
|   |  | For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction.   |
| transaction number<br><txn_number>            | String<br><br>255-character, alphanumeric, hyphens or underscores<br><br>variable length | Used to reference the original transaction when performing a follow-on transaction (i.e., Pre-Authorization Completion, Purchase Correction or Refund)<br><br>This value is returned in the response of the original transaction<br><br>Pre-Authorization Completion: references a Pre-Authorization<br><br>Refund/Purchase Correction: references a Purchase or Pre-Authorization Completion   |
| electronic commerce indicator<br><crypt_type> | String<br><br>1-character alphanumeric   | Describes the category of e-commerce transaction being processed. Allowable values are:<br><br>1 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Single<br><br>2 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Recurring<br><br>3 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Instalment<br><br>4 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Unknown classification<br><br>5 – Authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)<br><br>6 – Non-authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)<br><br>7 – SSL-enabled merchant<br><br><b>In Credential on File transactions where the request field e-commerce indicator is also being sent:</b> the allowable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for <b>payment indicator</b> , as follows: |



| Variable Name            | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|--------------------------|--|---|
|                          |  | <p>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = U, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> |
| customer ID<br><cust_id> | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>50-character alphanumeric</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b><br/>Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>&lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \</p> </div> | <p>Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier</p> <p>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center</p>   |

## 7.13 MCP Refund

Restores all or part of the funds from a MCP Purchase or MCP Pre-Authorization Completion transaction to the cardholder's card.

Unlike a MCP Purchase Correction, there is a record of both the initial charge and the refund on the cardholder's statement.

For processing refunds on a different card than the one used in the original transaction, the MCP Independent Refund transaction should be used instead.

### XML transaction object

<mcp\_refund>

### MCP Refund transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT mcp_refund (order_id, amount, txn_number, crypt_type, cust_id,
dynamic_descriptor?, mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_currency_code,
mcp_rate_token?)>
```

**Core connection object fields (all API transactions)**

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits      | Description  |
|--------------------------|----------------------|--|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | <i>String</i><br>N/A | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup  |
| API token<br><api_token> | <i>String</i><br>N/A | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

**Optional connection object field**

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits              | Description  |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required</p> </div> |

**MCP Refund transaction request fields – Required**

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
| order ID      | <i>String</i>   | Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every |

| Variable Name                                 | Type and Limits   | Description   |
|---|---|---|
| <order_id>                                    | 50-character alphanumeric<br>a-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces   | Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.<br><br>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction.   |
| amount  | <i>String</i>   | Transaction dollar amount   |
| <amount>                                      | 10-character decimal<br><br>Up to 7 digits (dollars) + decimal point (.) + 2 digits (cents) after the decimal point<br><br><b>EXAMPLE:</b> 1234567.89 | This must contain at least 3 digits, two of which are penny values<br><br>Minimum allowable value = \$0.01, maximum allowable value = \$9999999.99  |
| transaction number<br><txn_number>            | <i>String</i><br><br>255-character, alphanumeric, hyphens or underscores<br><br>variable length   | Used to reference the original transaction when performing a follow-on transaction (i.e., Pre-Authorization Completion, Purchase Correction or Refund)<br><br>This value is returned in the response of the original transaction<br><br>Pre-Authorization Completion: references a Pre-Authorization<br><br>Refund/Purchase Correction: references a Purchase or Pre-Authorization Completion |
| electronic commerce indicator<br><crypt_type> | <i>String</i><br><br>1-character alphanumeric   | Describes the category of e-commerce transaction being processed. Allowable values are:<br><br>1 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Single<br><br>2 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Recurring<br><br>3 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Instalment   |

| Variable Name                       | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|-------------------------------------|--|--|
|                                     |  | <p>4 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Unknown classification</p> <p>5 – Authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</p> <p>6 – Non-authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</p> <p>7 – SSL-enabled merchant</p> <p><b>In Credential on File transactions where the request field e-commerce indicator is also being sent:</b> the allowable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for <b>payment indicator</b>, as follows:</p> <p>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = U, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> |
| customer ID<br><cust_id>            | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>50-character alphanumeric</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b><br/>Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>&lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \</p> </div> | <p>Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier</p> <p>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center</p>  |
| MCP version number<br><mcp_version> | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>numeric</p> <p>current version is 1.0</p>  | Release version number for MCP   |
| cardholder amount                   | <i>String</i>  | Amount, in units of foreign currency, the cardholder will be charged on the  |

| Variable Name              | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|----------------------------|--|--|
| <cardholder_amount>        | 12-character numeric<br><br>smallest discrete unit of foreign currency | transaction  |
| cardholder currency code   | <i>String</i>  | ISO code representing the foreign currency of the cardholder |
| <cardholder_currency_code> | 3-character numeric  |  |

### MCP Refund transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name                              | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|--|--|---|
| dynamic descriptor<br><dynamic_descriptor> | <i>String</i><br><br>20-character alphanumeric<br><br>total of 22 characters including your merchant name and separator<br><br><div><b>NOTE:</b><br/>Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>&lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \</div> | Merchant-defined description sent on a per-transaction basis that will appear on the credit card statement appended to the merchant's business name<br><br>Dependent on the card issuer, the statement will typically show the dynamic descriptor appended to the merchant's existing business name separated by the "/" character; additional characters will be truncated<br><br><div><b>NOTE:</b> The 22-character maximum limit must take the "/" into account as one of the characters</div> |
| MCP rate token                             | <i>String</i>  | Token representing a temporarily locked-in foreign exchange rate, obtained in the response of the MCP Get Rate transaction and used in subsequent MCP financial transaction requests in order to redeem that rate   |
| <mcp_rate_token>                           | N/A  |   |

## 7.14 MCP Independent Refund

Credits a specified amount to the cardholder's credit card. The credit card number and expiry date are mandatory.

It is not necessary for the transaction that you are refunding to have been processed via the Moneris Gateway.

This transaction request is the multi-currency pricing (MCP) enabled version of the equivalent financial transaction.

### XML transaction object

```
<mcp_ind_refund>
```

### MCP Independent Refund transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT mcp_ind_refund (order_id, cust_id, pan, expdate, crypt_type, dynamic_descriptor?, mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_currency_code, mcp_rate_token?)>
```

### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits | Description  |
|--------------------------|-----------------|--|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | String<br>N/A   | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup  |
| API token<br><api_token> | String<br>N/A   | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

### Optional connection object field

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits       | Description   |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------|---|
| status check<br><status_check> | Boolean<br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values,</p> |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
|               |                 | except with status check = true<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required |

### MCP Independent Refund transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name               | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|-----------------------------|--|---|
| order ID<br><order_id>      | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alphanumeric<br>a-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces   | Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.<br><br>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction. |
| customer ID<br><cust_id>    | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alphanumeric<br><br><b>NOTE:</b><br>Some special characters are not allowed:<br>< > \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \ | Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier<br><br>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center  |
| credit card number<br><pan> | <i>String</i><br><br>max 20-character alphanumeric   | Credit card number, usually 16 digits —field can be maximum 20 digits in support of future expansion of card number ranges.<br><br>Carries the token for network tokenization transactions.   |
| expiry date<br><expdate>    | <i>String</i><br><br>4-character alphanumeric  | Expiry date of the credit card, in YYMM format.   |

| Variable Name  | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|--|--|---|
|  | YYMM   | <b>NOTE:</b> This is the reverse of the MMY date format that is presented on the card.  |
| MCP version number<br><mcp_version>                    | String<br>numeric<br>current version is 1.0                                  | Release version number for MCP  |
| cardholder amount<br><cardholder_amount>               | String<br>12-character numeric<br>smallest discrete unit of foreign currency | Amount, in units of foreign currency, the cardholder will be charged on the transaction |
| cardholder currency code<br><cardholder_currency_code> | String<br>3-character numeric  | ISO code representing the foreign currency of the cardholder                            |

### MCP Independent Refund transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name                              | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|--|--|--|
| dynamic descriptor<br><dynamic_descriptor> | String<br>20-character alphanumeric<br>total of 22 characters including your merchant name and separator<br><br><b>NOTE:</b><br>Some special characters are not allowed:<br>< > \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \ | Merchant-defined description sent on a per-transaction basis that will appear on the credit card statement appended to the merchant's business name<br><br>Dependent on the card issuer, the statement will typically show the dynamic descriptor appended to the merchant's existing business name separated by the "/" character; additional characters will be truncated<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> The 22-character maximum limit must take the "/" into account as one of the characters |
| MCP rate token                             | String   | Token representing a temporarily locked-in foreign exchange rate,  |



| Variable Name    | Type and Limits | Description   |
|------------------|-----------------|---|
| <mcp_rate_token> | N/A             | obtained in the response of the MCP Get Rate transaction and used in subsequent MCP financial transaction requests in order to redeem that rate |

## 7.15 MCP Purchase With Vault

This transaction uses the data key to identify a previously registered credit card profile in Vault. The details saved within the profile are then submitted to perform a Purchase transaction.

The data key may be a temporary one generated used Hosted Tokenization, or may be a permanent one from the Vault.

This transaction request is the multi-currency pricing (MCP) enabled version of the equivalent financial transaction.

### XML transaction object

<mcp\_res\_purchase\_cc>

### MCP Purchase With Vault transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT mcp_res_purchase_cc (data_key, order_id, cust_id, crypt_type,
dynamic_descriptor?, expdate?, mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_
currency_code, mcp_rate_token?)>
```

### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
| store ID      | <i>String</i>   | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup   |
| <store_id>    | N/A             |   |
| API token     | <i>String</i>   | Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation   |
| <api_token>   | N/A             |   |
|               |                 | To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs: |
|               |                 | Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a>  |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description |
|---------------|-----------------|-------------|
|---------------|-----------------|-------------|

Production: <https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/>

### Optional connection object field

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits                  | Description  |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|--|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br><br>true/false | Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully<br><br>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required |

### MCP Purchase With Vault transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name          | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|------------------------|--|---|
| data key<br><data_key> | <i>String</i><br><br>25-character alphanumeric                                     | Unique identifier for a Vault profile, and used in future Vault financial transactions to associate a transaction with that profile<br><br>Data key is generated by Moneris and returned to you in the Receipt object when the profile is first registered                            |
| order ID<br><order_id> | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alphanumeric<br><br>a-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces | Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.<br><br>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID |

| Variable Name                                 | Type and Limits   | Description  |
|---|---|--|
| customer ID<br><cust_id>                      | <i>String</i><br>50-character alphanumeric<br><div> <b>NOTE:</b><br/>           Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>           &lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \         </div> | must be the same as that of the original transaction.<br><br>Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier<br><br>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center  |
| electronic commerce indicator<br><crypt_type> | <i>String</i><br>1-character alphanumeric   | Describes the category of e-commerce transaction being processed. Allowable values are:<br><br>1 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Single<br><br>2 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Recurring<br><br>3 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Instalment<br><br>4 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Unknown classification<br><br>5 – Authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)<br><br>6 – Non-authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)<br><br>7 – SSL-enabled merchant<br><br><b>In Credential on File transactions where the request field e-commerce indicator is also being sent:</b> the allowable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for <b>payment indicator</b> , as follows:<br><br>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6<br><br>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6<br><br>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7<br><br>if payment indicator = U, then allowable values |

| Variable Name  | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|--|--|--|
|  |  | for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7<br><br>if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7 |
| MCP version number<br><mcp_version>                    | String<br><br>numeric<br><br>current version is 1.0                                  | Release version number for MCP   |
| cardholder amount<br><cardholder_amount>               | String<br><br>12-character numeric<br><br>smallest discrete unit of foreign currency | Amount, in units of foreign currency, the cardholder will be charged on the transaction  |
| cardholder currency code<br><cardholder_currency_code> | String<br><br>3-character numeric  | ISO code representing the foreign currency of the cardholder   |

### MCP Purchase With Vault transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name                              | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|--|--|--|
| dynamic descriptor<br><dynamic_descriptor> | String<br><br>20-character alphanumeric<br><br>total of 22 characters including your merchant name and separator<br><br><b>NOTE:</b><br>Some special characters are not allowed:<br>< > \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \ | Merchant-defined description sent on a per-transaction basis that will appear on the credit card statement appended to the merchant's business name<br><br>Dependent on the card issuer, the statement will typically show the dynamic descriptor appended to the merchant's existing business name separated by the "/" character; additional characters will be truncated<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> The 22-character maximum limit must take the "/" into account as one of the characters |
| expiry date<br><expdate>                   | String<br><br>4-character alphanumeric   | Expiry date of the credit card, in YYMM format.  |

| Variable Name                      | Type and Limits | Description   |
|------------------------------------|-----------------|---|
|                                    | YYMM            | <b>NOTE:</b> This is the reverse of the MMYM date format that is presented on the card.   |
| MCP rate token<br><mcp_rate_token> | String<br>N/A   | Token representing a temporarily locked-in foreign exchange rate, obtained in the response of the MCP Get Rate transaction and used in subsequent MCP financial transaction requests in order to redeem that rate |

## 7.16 MCP Pre-Authorization With Vault

This transaction uses the data key to identify a previously registered credit card profile in Vault. The details saved within the profile are then submitted to perform a Pre-Authorization transaction.

The data key may be a temporary one generated used Hosted Tokenization, or may be a permanent one from the Vault.

This transaction request is the multi-currency pricing (MCP) enabled version of the equivalent financial transaction.

### XML transaction object

```
<mcp_res_preauth_cc>
```

### MCP Pre-Authorization With Vault transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT mcp_res_preauth_cc (data_key, order_id, cust_id, crypt_type,
dynamic_descriptor?, expdate?, mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_
currency_code, mcp_rate_token?)>
```

### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits | Description  |
|--------------------------|-----------------|--|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | String<br>N/A   | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup  |
| API token<br><api_token> | String<br>N/A   | Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation<br><br>To find your API token, refer to your |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
|               |                 | <p>test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

### Optional connection object field

| Variable Name                                   | Type and Limits                         | Description  |
|---|---|--|
| <p>status check</p> <p>&lt;status_check&gt;</p> | <p><i>Boolean</i></p> <p>true/false</p> | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required</p> </div> |

### MCP Pre-Authorization With Vault transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name                           | Type and Limits                                       | Description   |
|---|---|---|
| <p>data key</p> <p>&lt;data_key&gt;</p> | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>25-character alphanumeric</p> | <p>Unique identifier for a Vault profile, and used in future Vault financial transactions to associate a transaction with that profile</p> <p>Data key is generated by Moneris and returned to you in the Receipt object when the profile is first registered</p> |
| <p>order ID</p> <p>&lt;order_id&gt;</p> | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>50-character alphanumeric</p> | <p>Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and</p>  |

| Variable Name                                 | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|---|--|---|
|   | a-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces   | <p>Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.</p> <p>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction.</p>  |
| customer ID<br><cust_id>                      | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>50-character alphanumeric</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b><br/>Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>&lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \</p> </div> | <p>Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier</p> <p>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center</p>   |
| electronic commerce indicator<br><crypt_type> | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>1-character alphanumeric</p>   | <p>Describes the category of e-commerce transaction being processed. Allowable values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Single</li> <li>2 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Recurring</li> <li>3 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Instalment</li> <li>4 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Unknown classification</li> <li>5 – Authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</li> <li>6 – Non-authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</li> <li>7 – SSL-enabled merchant</li> </ul> <p><b>In Credential on File transactions where the request field e-commerce indicator is also being sent:</b> the allowable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for <b>payment indicator</b>, as follows:</p> <p>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> |

| Variable Name  | Type and Limits   | Description  |
|--|---|--|
|  |   | <p>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = U, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> |
| cardholder amount<br><cardholder_amount>               | <i>String</i><br>12-character numeric<br>smallest discrete unit of foreign currency | Amount, in units of foreign currency, the cardholder will be charged on the transaction  |
| cardholder currency code<br><cardholder_currency_code> | <i>String</i><br>3-character numeric  | ISO code representing the foreign currency of the cardholder   |

### MCP Pre-Authorization With Vault transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name                              | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|--|--|---|
| dynamic descriptor<br><dynamic_descriptor> | <i>String</i><br>20-character alphanumeric<br>total of 22 characters including your merchant name and separator<br><div> <b>NOTE:</b><br/>           Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>           &lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \         </div> | <p>Merchant-defined description sent on a per-transaction basis that will appear on the credit card statement appended to the merchant's business name</p> <p>Dependent on the card issuer, the statement will typically show the dynamic descriptor appended to the merchant's existing business name separated by the "/" character; additional characters will be truncated</p> <div> <b>NOTE:</b> The 22-character maximum limit must take the "/" into account as one of the characters         </div> |
| expiry date                                | <i>String</i>  | Expiry date of the credit card, in YYMM format.   |



| Variable Name                      | Type and Limits                  | Description   |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|---|
| <expdate>                          | 4-character alphanumeric<br>YYMM | <b>NOTE:</b> This is the reverse of the MMY date format that is presented on the card.  |
| MCP rate token<br><mcp_rate_token> | String<br>N/A                    | Token representing a temporarily locked-in foreign exchange rate, obtained in the response of the MCP Get Rate transaction and used in subsequent MCP financial transaction requests in order to redeem that rate |

## 7.17 MCP Independent Refund with Vault

This transaction uses the data key to identify a previously registered credit card profile in Vault. The details saved within the profile are then submitted to perform an Independent Refund transaction.

This transaction request is the multi-currency pricing (MCP) enabled version of the equivalent financial transaction.

### XML transaction object

<mcp\_ind\_refund>

### MCP Independent Refund with Vault transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT mcp_res_ind_refund_cc (data_key, order_id, cust_id, crypt_type,
dynamic_descriptor?, mcp_version, cardholder_amount, cardholder_currency_code,
mcp_rate_token?)>
```

### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits | Description   |
|--------------------------|-----------------|---|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | String<br>N/A   | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup   |
| API token<br><api_token> | String<br>N/A   | Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation<br><br>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
|               |                 | Center, at the following URLs:<br><br>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a><br><br>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a> |

### Optional connection object field

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits                  | Description  |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|--|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br><br>true/false | Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully<br><br>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required |

### MCP Independent Refund with Vault transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name          | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|------------------------|--|--|
| data key<br><data_key> | <i>String</i><br><br>25-character alphanumeric                                     | Unique identifier for a Vault profile, and used in future Vault financial transactions to associate a transaction with that profile<br><br>Data key is generated by Moneris and returned to you in the Receipt object when the profile is first registered |
| order ID<br><order_id> | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alphanumeric<br><br>a-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces | Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may   |

| Variable Name  | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|--|--|--|
|  |  | <p>have the same order ID.</p> <p>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction.</p>  |
| <p>customer ID</p> <p>&lt;cust_id&gt;</p>                      | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>50-character alphanumeric</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b><br/>Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>&lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \</p> </div> | <p>Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier</p> <p>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center</p>  |
| <p>electronic commerce indicator</p> <p>&lt;crypt_type&gt;</p> | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>1-character alphanumeric</p>   | <p>Describes the category of e-commerce transaction being processed. Allowable values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Single</li> <li>2 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Recurring</li> <li>3 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Instalment</li> <li>4 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Unknown classification</li> <li>5 – Authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</li> <li>6 – Non-authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</li> <li>7 – SSL-enabled merchant</li> </ul> <p><b>In Credential on File transactions where the request field e-commerce indicator is also being sent:</b> the allowable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for <b>payment indicator</b>, as follows:</p> <p>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> |

| Variable Name  | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|--|--|---|
|  |  | <p>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = U, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> |
| MCP version number<br><mcp_version>                    | String<br><br>numeric<br><br>current version is 1.0                                  | Release version number for MCP  |
| cardholder amount<br><cardholder_amount>               | String<br><br>12-character numeric<br><br>smallest discrete unit of foreign currency | Amount, in units of foreign currency, the cardholder will be charged on the transaction   |
| cardholder currency code<br><cardholder_currency_code> | String<br><br>3-character numeric  | ISO code representing the foreign currency of the cardholder  |

### MCP Independent Refund with Vault transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name                              | Type and Limits   | Description   |
|--|---|---|
| dynamic descriptor<br><dynamic_descriptor> | String<br><br>20-character alphanumeric<br><br>total of 22 characters including your merchant name and separator<br><br><div> <b>NOTE:</b><br/> Some special characters are not allowed:<br/> &lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \ </div> | <p>Merchant-defined description sent on a per-transaction basis that will appear on the credit card statement appended to the merchant's business name</p> <p>Dependent on the card issuer, the statement will typically show the dynamic descriptor appended to the merchant's existing business name separated by the "/" character; additional characters will be truncated</p> <div> <b>NOTE:</b> The 22-character maximum limit must take the "/" into account as one of the characters </div> |

| Variable Name    | Type and Limits | Description   |
|------------------|-----------------|---|
| MCP rate token   | <i>String</i>   | Token representing a temporarily locked-in foreign exchange rate, obtained in the response of the MCP Get Rate transaction and used in subsequent MCP financial transaction requests in order to redeem that rate |
| <mcp_rate_token> | N/A             |   |

## 7.18 MCP Get Rate

Performs a foreign currency exchange rate look-up, and secures that exchange rate for use in a subsequent MCP financial transaction.

The exchange rate retrieved by this transaction request is represented in the response as the **RateToken**, and the underlying exchange rate is locked in for a limited time period.

### XML transaction object

<mcp\_get\_rate>

### MCP Get Rate transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT mcp_get_rate (mcp_version, rate_txn_type, rate_info)>
```

### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
| store ID      | <i>String</i>   | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup   |
| <store_id>    | N/A             |   |
| API token     | <i>String</i>   | Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation   |
| <api_token>   | N/A             |   |
|               |                 | To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs: |
|               |                 | Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a>  |
|               |                 | Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a>   |

**Optional connection object field**

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits                  | Description   |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|---|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br><br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required </div> |

**MCP Get Rate transaction request fields – Required**

| Variable Name                            | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|--|--|---|
| MCP version number<br><mcp_version>      | <i>String</i><br><br>numeric<br><br>current version is 1.0     | Release version number for MCP  |
| rate transaction type<br><rate_txn_type> | <i>String</i><br><br>1-character alphabetic                    | <p>Value representing the type of subsequent transaction request that the rate token will be used for.</p> <p>Allowable values:</p> <p>P – Purchase</p> <p>R – Refund</p> |
| MCP Rate Info<br><rate_info>             | <i>Object</i><br><br>N/A                                       | Nested object in the MCP Get Rate transaction containing the <b>add cardholder amount</b> and <b>add merchant settlement</b> fields                                       |
| add cardholder amount                    | <i>String</i><br><br>12-character numeric, 3-character numeric | <p>A string array representing:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the amount, in units of foreign</li> </ul>   |

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits   | Description   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|
|                                | (smallest discrete unit of foreign currency, currency code)   | <p>currency, the cardholder will be charged, and</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the ISO currency code corresponding to the foreign currency of the cardholder</li> </ul>  |
| add merchant settlement amount | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>12-character numeric, 3-character numeric</p> <p>(amount in CAD pennies, currency code)</p> | <p>A string array representing:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the amount the merchant will receive in the transaction, in Canadian dollars</li> <li>the ISO currency code corresponding to the foreign currency of the cardholder</li> </ul> |

## 7.19 MCP Currency Codes

For currency symbols, see <https://justforex.com/education/currencies>

**NOTE:** This documentation contains links to websites owned and operated by third parties. If you use these links, you leave our website. These links are provided for your information and convenience only and are not an endorsement by Moneris Solutions of the content of such linked websites or third parties. Moneris Solutions has no control over the contents of any linked website and is not responsible for these websites or their content or availability. If you decide to access any third party websites and make use of the information contained on them, you do so entirely at your own risk.

| Numeric Currency Code (ISO) | Currency Name/Acronym |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| 008                         | Albanian Lek (ALL)    |
| 012                         | Algerian Dinar (DZD)  |
| 032                         | Argentine Peso (ARS)  |

| Numeric Currency Code (ISO) | Currency Name/Acronym        |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 036                         | Australian Dollar (AUD)      |
| 048                         | Bahraini Dinar (BHD)         |
| 050                         | Bangladeshi Taka (BDT)       |
| 052                         | Barbados Dollar (BBD)        |
| 060                         | Bermudian Dollar (BMD)       |
| 064                         | Bhutan Ngultrum (BTN)        |
| 068                         | Bolivia Boliviano (BOB)      |
| 084                         | Belize Dollar (BZD)          |
| 090                         | Solomon Islands Dollar (SBD) |
| 096                         | Brunei Dollar (BND)          |
| 108                         | Burundi Franc (BIF)          |
| 132                         | Cabo Verde Escudo (CVE)      |
| 136                         | Cayman Islands Dollar (KYD)  |
| 144                         | Sri Lanka Rupee (LKR)        |
| 152                         | Chilean Peso (CLP)           |
| 156                         | Chinese Yuan (CNY)           |
| 170                         | Colombian Peso (COP)         |
| 174                         | Comorian Franc (KMF)         |
| 188                         | Costa Rican Colon (CRC)      |
| 191                         | Croatian Kuna (HRK)          |
| 192                         | Cuban Peso (CUP)             |
| 203                         | Czech Koruna (CZK)           |



| Numeric Currency Code (ISO) | Currency Name/Acronym   |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 208                         | Danish Krone (DKK)      |
| 214                         | Dominican Republic Peso |
| 222                         | Salvadoran Colon (SVC)  |
| 242                         | Fijian Dollar (FJD)     |
| 262                         | Djiboutian Franc (DJF)  |
| 270                         | Gambian Dalasi (GMD)    |
| 292                         | Gibraltar Pound (GIP)   |
| 320                         | Guatemala Quetzal (GTQ) |
| 324                         | Guinean Franc (GNF)     |
| 328                         | Guyanese Dollar (GYD)   |
| 332                         | Haitian Gourde (HTG)    |
| 340                         | Honduran Lempira (HNL)  |
| 344                         | Hong Kong Dollar (HKD)  |
| 348                         | Hungarian Forint (HUF)  |
| 352                         | Iceland Krona (ISK)     |
| 356                         | Indian Rupee (INR)      |
| 360                         | Indonesian Rupiah (IDR) |
| 376                         | Israeli Shekel (ILS)    |
| 388                         | Jamaican Dollar (JMD)   |
| 392                         | Japanese Yen (JPY)      |
| 398                         | Kazakh Tenge (KZT)      |
| 400                         | Jordanian Dinar (JOD)   |

| Numeric Currency Code (ISO) | Currency Name/Acronym               |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 404                         | Kenyan Shilling (KES)               |
| 410                         | South Korean Won (KRW)              |
| 414                         | Kuwaiti Dinar (KWD)                 |
| 418                         | Laotian Kip (LAK)                   |
| 426                         | Lesotho Loti (LSL)                  |
| 430                         | Liberian Dollar (LRD)               |
| 446                         | Macanese Pataca (MOP)               |
| 454                         | Malawian Kwacha (MWK)               |
| 458                         | Malaysian Ringgit (MYR)             |
| 462                         | Maldivian Rufiyaa (MVR)             |
| 480                         | Mauritius Rupee (MUR)               |
| 484                         | Mexican Peso (MXN)                  |
| 498                         | Moldovan Leu (MDL)                  |
| 504                         | Moroccan Dirham (MAD)               |
| 512                         | Omani Rial (OMR)                    |
| 516                         | Namibian Dollar (NAD)               |
| 524                         | Nepalese Rupee (NPR)                |
| 532                         | Netherlands Antillean Guilder (ANG) |
| 533                         | Aruban Guilder (AWG)                |
| 548                         | Vanuatu Vatu (VUV)                  |
| 554                         | New Zealand Dollar (NZD)            |
| 558                         | Nicaraguan Cordoba (NIO)            |

| Numeric Currency Code (ISO) | Currency Name/Acronym          |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 566                         | Nigerian Naira (NGN)           |
| 578                         | Norwegian Krone (NOK)          |
| 586                         | Pakistan Rupee (PKR)           |
| 598                         | Papua New Guinean Kina (PGK)   |
| 600                         | Paraguayan Guarani (PYG)       |
| 604                         | Peruvian Nuevo Sol (PEN)       |
| 608                         | Philippine Peso (PHP)          |
| 634                         | Qatari Rial (QAR)              |
| 643                         | Russian Ruble (RUB)            |
| 646                         | Rwandan Franc (RWF)            |
| 654                         | Saint Helena Pound (SHP)       |
| 682                         | Saudi Riyal (SAR)              |
| 690                         | Seychelles Rupee (SCR)         |
| 694                         | Sierra Leonean Leone (SLL)     |
| 702                         | Singapore Dollar (SGD)         |
| 704                         | Vietnamese Dong (VND)          |
| 710                         | South African Rand (ZAR)       |
| 748                         | Swaziland Lilangeni (SZL)      |
| 752                         | Swedish Krona (SEK)            |
| 756                         | Swiss Franc (CHF)              |
| 764                         | Thai Baht (THB)                |
| 780                         | Trinidad & Tobago Dollar (TTD) |

| Numeric Currency Code (ISO) | Currency Name/Acronym              |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 784                         | UAE Dirham (AED)                   |
| 788                         | Tunisian Dinar (TND)               |
| 800                         | Ugandan Shilling (UGX)             |
| 807                         | Macedonian Denar (MKD)             |
| 818                         | Egyptian Pound (EGP)               |
| 826                         | UK Pound Sterling (GBP)            |
| 834                         | Tanzanian Shilling (TZS)           |
| 840                         | US Dollar (USD)                    |
| 858                         | Uruguayan Peso (UYU)               |
| 860                         | Uzbekistani Sum (UZS)              |
| 882                         | Samoan Tala (WST)                  |
| 901                         | New Taiwan Dollar (TWD)            |
| 929                         | Mauritanian Ouguiya (MRU)          |
| 933                         | Belarusian Ruble (BYN)             |
| 934                         | Turkmenistan Manat (TMT)           |
| 941                         | Serbian Dinar (RSD)                |
| 943                         | Mozambique Metical (MZN)           |
| 944                         | Azerbaijani Manat (AZN)            |
| 946                         | Romanian New Leu (RON)             |
| 949                         | New Turkish Lira (TRY)             |
| 951                         | East Caribbean Dollar (XCD)        |
| 952                         | West African CFA Franc BCEAO (XOF) |

| Numeric Currency Code (ISO) | Currency Name/Acronym                         |
|-----------------------------|---|
| 953                         | CFP Franc (XPF)                               |
| 967                         | Zambian Kwacha (ZMW)                          |
| 968                         | Surinamese Dollar (SRD)                       |
| 969                         | Malagasy Ariary (MGA)                         |
| 971                         | Afghan Afghani (AFN)                          |
| 972                         | Tajikistan Somoni (TJS)                       |
| 973                         | Angola Kwanza (AOA)                           |
| 975                         | Bulgarian Lev (BGN)                           |
| 977                         | Bosnia and Herzegovina Convertible Mark (BAM) |
| 978                         | Euro (EUR)                                    |
| 981                         | Georgian Lari (GEL)                           |
| 985                         | Polish New Zloty (PLN)                        |
| 986                         | Brazilian Real (BRL)                          |

## 7.20 MCP Error Codes

| Error Code | Description   |
|------------|---|
| 200        | OK (there will be no value returned in the MCP error message)                               |
| 500        | Upstream error  |
| 1000       | Invalid JSON format   |
| 1003       | Invalid txnType detected: <invalid txnType> please enter PURCHASE or REFUND                 |
| 1005       | Invalid rateInquiryId-txnType combination.  |
| 1007       | Warning: at least one of cardHolderCurrency or merchantSettlementCurrency must be non-zero. |

| Error Code | Description  |
|------------|--|
| 1008       | Card-holder amount must be non-zero.                             |
| 1009       | Negative amounts detected  |
| 1010       | Unsupported cardholder currency detected: <unsupported currency> |
| 1015       | invalid rateInquiryId  |
| 1016       | Unsupported merchant id  |

## 8 Apple Pay Token Transactions

- 8.1 About Apple Pay Token Transactions
- 8.2 Apple Pay Token Request DTD
- 8.3 Apple Pay Token Purchase
- 8.4 Apple Pay Token Pre-Authorization

### 8.1 About Apple Pay Token Transactions

ApplePayToken transactions are a list of transactions for merchants who are trying to pass ApplePay PKPayment objects to Moneris for decryption.

This is intended for merchants who are trying to pass the data through their own centralized platform rather than using the mobile device where the InApp transaction takes place. This is an extension of the ApplePay InApp/On the Web transactions. The values used in the transaction can be obtained during the transaction using the PKPayment object returned in Delegate/Events.

| Language    | Delegate/Event   |
|-------------|--|
| Objective C | <code>paymentAuthorizationViewController:didAuthorizePayment:handler:</code>         |
| Swift       | <code>paymentAuthorizationViewController<br/>(_:didAuthorizePayment:handler:)</code> |
| JavaScript  | <code>ApplePaySession.onpaymentauthorized</code>                                     |

### 8.2 Apple Pay Token Request DTD

**NOTE:** this is an addendum to the Moneris Gateway XML DTD Field definition, the response DTD remains unchanged from other e-commerce transactions.

```
<!-- Main Elements -->
<!ELEMENT request (store_id, api_token, (applepay_token_purchase, applepay_token_preauth))>

<!ELEMENT applepay_token_purchase (order_id, cust_id?, amount, displayName, network, version,
data, signature, header, type, dynamic_descriptor?, token_originator?)>

<!ELEMENT applepay_token_preauth (order_id, cust_id?, amount, displayName, network, version,
data, signature, header, type, dynamic_descriptor?, token_originator?)>
```

```
<!ELEMENT header (public_key_hash, ephemeral_public_key, transaction_id)>

<!ELEMENT token_originator (store_id, api_token)>
```

## 8.3 Apple Pay Token Purchase

This is a purchase transaction used for merchants who want to use the Moneris Unified API to process Apple Pay transactions while also having Moneris handle the decryption.

### XML transaction object

```
<applepay_token_purchase>
```

### Apple Pay Token Purchase transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT applepay_token_purchase (order_id, cust_id?, amount, displayName,
network, version, data, signature, header, type, dynamic_descriptor?, token_
originator?)>
```

### Apple Pay Token Purchase transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name          | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|------------------------|--|---|
| order ID<br><order_id> | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alphanumeric<br><br>a-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces   | Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.<br><br>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction. |
| amount<br><amount>     | <i>String</i><br><br>10-character decimal<br><br>Up to 7 digits (dollars) + decimal point (.) + 2 digits (cents) after the decimal point<br><br><div>EXAMPLE: 1234567.89</div> | Transaction dollar amount<br><br>This must contain at least 3 digits, two of which are penny values<br><br>Minimum allowable value = \$0.01, maximum allowable value = \$9999999.99   |
| display name           | <i>String</i>  | Field returned by Apple that displays   |



| Variable Name  | Type and Limits      | Description   |
|--|----------------------|---|
| <code>&lt;displayName&gt;</code>                         | N/A                  | the name of a user's card for ease of recognition   |
| <code>signature</code><br><code>&lt;signature&gt;</code> | <i>String</i><br>N/A | Signature of the payment and header data<br><br>The signature includes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• the signing certificate,</li> <li>• its intermediate CA certificate, and</li> <li>• information about the signing algorithm</li> </ul>   |
| <code>data</code><br><code>&lt;data&gt;</code>           | <i>String</i><br>N/A | Encrypted payment data, presented as a Base64 Encoded string  |
| <code>version</code><br><code>&lt;version&gt;</code>     | <i>String</i><br>N/A | Version information about the payment token<br><br>Only EC_v1 is supported  |
| <code>header</code><br><code>&lt;header&gt;</code>       | <i>Object</i><br>N/A | Additional version-dependent information used to decrypt and verify the payment<br><br>There are three items in the setter: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Public Key Hash</li> <li>• Ephemeral Public Key</li> <li>• Transaction ID</li> </ul> |

**Required Fields for Header Object**

| Variable Name                                  | Type and Limits | Description  |
|--|-----------------|--|
| public key hash<br><public_key_hash>           | String<br>N/A   | SHA-256 Hash of the X.509 encoded public key bytes of the merchant's certificate |
| ephemeral public key<br><ephemeral_public_key> | String<br>N/A   | Ephemeral public key bytes   |
| transaction ID<br><transaction_id>             | String<br>N/A   | Transaction identifier, generated on device                                      |

**Apple Pay Token Purchase transaction request fields – Optional**

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|--------------------------|--|---|
| customer ID<br><cust_id> | String<br>50-character alphanumeric<br><div><b>NOTE:</b><br/>Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>&lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \</div> | Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier<br><br>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center  |
| network<br><network>     | String<br>N/A  | This field is mandatory for Apple Pay and Google Pay™ INTERAC® e-Commerce transactions whereby the merchant is using their own API to decrypt the payload.<br><br>Field is case sensitive<br><br>Possible value:<br><br>Interac |
| type<br><type>           | String<br>N/A  | This field is mandatory for INTERAC® e-CommerceApple Pay and Google Pay™ transactions whereby the merchant is using their own API to decrypt the payload  |

| Variable Name                              | Type and Limits   | Description  |
|--|---|--|
|  |   | <p>Field is case sensitive</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <p>3DSecure = Cryptogram obtained using MerchantCapability3DS</p> <p>EMV = Cryptogram obtained using MerchantCapablitiyEMV</p>  |
| dynamic descriptor<br><dynamic_descriptor> | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>20-character alphanumeric</p> <p>total of 22 characters including your merchant name and separator</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b><br/>Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>&lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \</p> </div> | <p>Merchant-defined description sent on a per-transaction basis that will appear on the credit card statement appended to the merchant's business name</p> <p>Dependent on the card issuer, the statement will typically show the dynamic descriptor appended to the merchant's existing business name separated by the "/" character; additional characters will be truncated</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The 22-character maximum limit must take the "/" into account as one of the characters</p> </div> |
| token originator<br><token_originator>     | <p><i>Object</i></p> <p>N/A</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This object is used for merchants who own multiple merchant accounts and would like to decrypt using the encryption key of a master store</p> </div>                                      | <p>Indicates the master store for the purposes of decryption</p> <p>Applicable for merchants who have multiple merchant accounts but want to decrypt a transaction using the encryption key of a master store</p>  |

### Fields for Optional Token Originator Object

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description                           |
|---------------|-----------------|---------------------------------------|
| store ID      | <i>String</i>   | Unique identifier provided by Moneris |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description  |
|---------------|-----------------|--|
| <store_id>    | N/A             | upon merchant account setup  |
| API token     | String<br>N/A   | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

## 8.4 Apple Pay Token Pre-Authorization

This is a pre-authorization transaction used for merchants who want to use the Moneris Unified API to process Apple Pay transactions while also having Moneris handle the decryption.

### XML transaction object

```
<applepay_token_preauth>
```

### Apple Pay Token Pre-Authorization transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT applepay_token_preauth (order_id, cust_id?, amount, displayName, network, version, data, signature, header, type, dynamic_descriptor?, token_ originator?)>
```

### Apple Pay Token Pre-Authorization transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name          | Type and Limits   | Description  |
|------------------------|---|--|
| order ID<br><order_id> | String<br>50-character alphanumeric<br>a-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces | <p>Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.</p> <p>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID</p> |

| Variable Name                 | Type and Limits   | Description   |
|-------------------------------|---|---|
|                               |   | must be the same as that of the original transaction.   |
| amount<br><amount>            | String<br><br>10-character decimal<br><br>Up to 7 digits (dollars) + decimal point (.) + 2 digits (cents) after the decimal point<br><br><b>EXAMPLE: 1234567.89</b> | Transaction dollar amount<br><br>This must contain at least 3 digits, two of which are penny values<br><br>Minimum allowable value = \$0.01, maximum allowable value = \$9999999.99   |
| display name<br><displayName> | String<br><br>N/A   | Field returned by Apple that displays the name of a user's card for ease of recognition   |
| signature<br><signature>      | String<br><br>N/A   | Signature of the payment and header data<br><br>The signature includes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the signing certificate,</li> <li>its intermediate CA certificate, and</li> <li>information about the signing algorithm</li> </ul> |
| data<br><data>                | String<br><br>N/A   | Encrypted payment data, presented as a Base64 Encoded string  |
| version<br><version>          | String<br><br>N/A   | Version information about the payment token<br><br>Only EC_v1 is supported  |
| header<br><header>            | Object<br><br>N/A   | Additional version-dependent information used to decrypt and verify the   |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description  |
|---------------|-----------------|--|
|               |                 | <p>payment</p> <p>There are three items in the setter:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Public Key Hash</li> <li>Ephemeral Public Key</li> <li>Transaction ID</li> </ul> |

### Required Fields for Header Object

| Variable Name                                  | Type and Limits      | Description  |
|--|----------------------|--|
| public key hash<br><public_key_hash>           | <i>String</i><br>N/A | SHA-256 Hash of the X.509 encoded public key bytes of the merchant's certificate |
| ephemeral public key<br><ephemeral_public_key> | <i>String</i><br>N/A | Ephemeral public key bytes   |
| transaction ID<br><transaction_id>             | <i>String</i><br>N/A | Transaction identifier, generated on device                                      |

### Apple Pay Token Pre-Authorization transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits   | Description  |
|--------------------------|---|--|
| customer ID<br><cust_id> | <i>String</i><br>50-character alphanumeric<br><div> <b>NOTE:</b><br/>           Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>           &lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \         </div> | Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier<br><br>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center |
| network<br><network>     | <i>String</i>   | This field is mandatory for Apple Pay and Google Pay™ INTERAC® e-Com-  |

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits   | Description   |
|---|---|---|
|   | N/A   | <p>merce transactions whereby the merchant is using their own API to decrypt the payload.</p> <p>Field is case sensitive</p> <p>Possible value:</p> <p>Interac</p>  |
| <p>type</p> <p>&lt;type&gt;</p>                             | <p>String</p> <p>N/A</p>  | <p>This field is mandatory for INTERAC® e-CommerceApple Pay and Google Pay™ transactions whereby the merchant is using their own API to decrypt the payload</p> <p>Field is case sensitive</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <p>3DSecure = Cryptogram obtained using MerchantCapability3DS</p> <p>EMV = Cryptogram obtained using MerchantCapablitiyEMV</p>   |
| <p>dynamic descriptor</p> <p>&lt;dynamic_descriptor&gt;</p> | <p>String</p> <p>20-character alphanumeric total of 22 characters including your merchant name and separator</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b><br/>Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>&lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \</p> </div> | <p>Merchant-defined description sent on a per-transaction basis that will appear on the credit card statement appended to the merchant's business name</p> <p>Dependent on the card issuer, the statement will typically show the dynamic descriptor appended to the merchant's existing business name separated by the "/" character; additional characters will be truncated</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The 22-character maximum limit must take the "/" into account as one of the characters</p> </div> <p><b>For Pre-Authorization transactions:</b> the value in the dynamic descriptor field will only be carried</p> |

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits | Description  |
|---|-----------------|--|
| token originator<br><token_originator>  | Object<br>N/A   | over to a Pre-Authorization Completion when executing the latter via the Merchant Resource Center; otherwise, the value for dynamic descriptor must be sent again in the Pre-Authorization Completion      |
| <div> <b>NOTE:</b> This object is used for merchants who own multiple merchant accounts and would like to decrypt using the encryption key of a master store </div> |                 | Indicates the master store for the purposes of decryption<br><br>Applicable for merchants who have multiple merchant accounts but want to decrypt a transaction using the encryption key of a master store |

### Fields for Optional Token Originator Object

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits | Description  |
|--------------------------|-----------------|--|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | String<br>N/A   | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup  |
| API token<br><api_token> | String<br>N/A   | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |



## 9 Google Pay Transactions

- 9.1 About Google Pay Transactions
- 9.2 Google Pay Purchase
- 9.3 Google Pay Pre-Authorization

### 9.1 About Google Pay Transactions

Google Pay™ transactions can be processed using the Moneris API.

### 9.2 Google Pay Purchase

Purchase transaction using Google Pay™

#### XML transaction object

```
<googlepay_purchase>
```

#### Google Pay Purchase transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT googlepay_purchase (order_id, cust_id?, amount, network, payment_token, dynamic_descriptor?)>
```

#### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits | Description   |
|--------------------------|-----------------|---|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | String<br>N/A   | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup   |
| API token<br><api_token> | String<br>N/A   | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description |
|---------------|-----------------|-------------|
|---------------|-----------------|-------------|

Production: <https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/>

### Optional connection object field

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits                  | Description  |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|--|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br><br>true/false | Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully<br><br>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required |

### Google Pay Purchase transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name          | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|------------------------|--|---|
| order ID<br><order_id> | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alphanumeric<br>a-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces   | Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.<br><br>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction. |
| amount<br><amount>     | <i>String</i><br><br>10-character decimal<br><br>Up to 7 digits (dollars) + decimal point (.) + 2 digits (cents) after the decimal | Transaction dollar amount<br><br>This must contain at least 3 digits, two of which are penny values<br><br>Minimum allowable value = \$0.01, maximum allowable value =  |

| Variable Name                    | Type and Limits                     | Description   |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
|                                  | point                               | \$9999999.99  |
|                                  | <div>EXAMPLE: 1234567.89</div>      |   |
| network<br><network>             | String<br>alphabetic                | <p>This field is mandatory for Apple Pay and Google Pay™ INTERAC® e-Commerce transactions whereby the merchant is using their own API to decrypt the payload.</p> <p>Field is case sensitive</p> <p>Possible value:</p> <p>Interac</p>  |
| payment token<br><payment_token> | String<br>32-character alphanumeric | <p>Payment token submitted by merchant for order (credit card, payer ID, routing/transit, MICR, and account number)</p> <p>If payment_type is set to None then the payment_token value should be left empty (NULL)</p> <p>If the credit card information is not available and a Moneris Vault token is used to process payment set payment_type = TOKEN and send the token (data key) in the payment_token field.</p> |

### Google Pay Purchase transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|--------------------------|--|---|
| customer ID<br><cust_id> | String<br>50-character alphanumeric<br><div> <b>NOTE:</b><br/> Some special characters are not allowed:<br/> &lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \ </div> | <p>Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier</p> <p>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center</p> |

| Variable Name                              | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|--|--|---|
| dynamic descriptor<br><dynamic_descriptor> | <i>String</i><br>20-character alphanumeric<br>total of 22 characters including your merchant name and separator<br><div> <b>NOTE:</b><br/>           Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>           &lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \         </div> | Merchant-defined description sent on a per-transaction basis that will appear on the credit card statement appended to the merchant's business name<br>Dependent on the card issuer, the statement will typically show the dynamic descriptor appended to the merchant's existing business name separated by the "/" character; additional characters will be truncated<br><div> <b>NOTE:</b> The 22-character maximum limit must take the "/" into account as one of the characters         </div> |

### 9.3 Google Pay Pre-Authorization

Pre-Authorization transaction using Google Pay™.

#### XML transaction object

<googlepay\_preauth>

#### Google Pay Pre-Authorization transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT googlepay_preauth (order_id, cust_id?, amount, network, payment_token, dynamic_descriptor?)>
```

#### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits      | Description   |
|--------------------------|----------------------|---|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | <i>String</i><br>N/A | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup   |
| API token<br><api_token> | <i>String</i><br>N/A | Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation<br>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
|               |                 | Center, at the following URLs:<br><br>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a><br><br>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a> |

### Optional connection object field

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits                  | Description  |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|--|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br><br>true/false | Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully<br><br>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required |

### Google Pay Pre-Authorization transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name          | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|------------------------|--|---|
| order ID<br><order_id> | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alphanumeric<br>a-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces | Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.<br><br>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction. |
| amount                 | <i>String</i>  | Transaction dollar amount   |

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits   | Description  |
|---|---|--|
| <code>&lt;amount&gt;</code>                             | 10-character decimal<br><br>Up to 7 digits (dollars) + decimal point (.) + 2 digits (cents) after the decimal point<br><br><div>EXAMPLE: 1234567.89</div> | This must contain at least 3 digits, two of which are penny values<br><br>Minimum allowable value = \$0.01, maximum allowable value = \$9999999.99   |
| network<br><br><code>&lt;network&gt;</code>             | <i>String</i><br><br>alphabetic   | This field is mandatory for Apple Pay and Google Pay™ INTERAC® e-Commerce transactions whereby the merchant is using their own API to decrypt the payload.<br><br>Field is case sensitive<br><br>Possible value:<br><br>Interac  |
| payment token<br><br><code>&lt;payment_token&gt;</code> | <i>String</i><br><br>32-character alphanumeric  | Payment token submitted by merchant for order (credit card, payer ID, routing/transit, MICR, and account number)<br><br>If payment_type is set to None then the payment_token value should be left empty (NULL)<br><br>If the credit card information is not available and a Moneris Vault token is used to process payment set payment_type = TOKEN and send the token (data key) in the payment_token field. |

### Google Pay Pre-Authorization transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name                                   | Type and Limits                                | Description  |
|---|--|--|
| customer ID<br><br><code>&lt;cust_id&gt;</code> | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alphanumeric | Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier |

| Variable Name                              | Type and Limits   | Description   |
|--|---|---|
|  | <p><b>NOTE:</b><br/>Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>&lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \</p>   | Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center  |
| dynamic descriptor<br><dynamic_descriptor> | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>20-character alphanumeric<br/>total of 22 characters including your merchant name and separator</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b><br/>Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>&lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \</p> | <p>Merchant-defined description sent on a per-transaction basis that will appear on the credit card statement appended to the merchant's business name</p> <p>Dependent on the card issuer, the statement will typically show the dynamic descriptor appended to the merchant's existing business name separated by the "/" character; additional characters will be truncated</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The 22-character maximum limit must take the "/" into account as one of the characters</p> |

## 10 Recurring Billing

- 10.1 About Recurring Billing
- 10.2 Purchase with Recurring Billing
- 10.3 Recurring Billing Update
- 10.4 Recurring Billing Response Fields and Codes
- 10.5 Credential on File and Recurring Billing

### 10.1 About Recurring Billing

Recurring Billing allows you to set up payments whereby Moneris automatically processes the transactions and bills customers on your behalf based on the billing cycle information you provide.

Recurring Billing series are created by sending the Recurring Billing object in these transactions:

- Purchase
- Purchase with Vault
- Purchase with 3-D Secure (cavvPurchase)

You can modify a Recurring Billing series after it has been created by sending the Recurring Billing Update administrative transaction.

**NOTE:** Alternatively, if you prefer to manage recurring series on your own merchant system, you can send the periodic payments as basic Purchase transactions with the e-commerce indicator (`crypt_type`) value = 2 and with the Credential on File info object included.

### 10.2 Purchase with Recurring Billing

Purchase transaction with the Recurring Billing object included as part of the request.

Recurring Billing allows you to set up payments whereby Moneris automatically processes the transactions and bills customers on your behalf based on the billing cycle information you provide.

#### Purchase with Recurring Billing transaction object definition

```
<!ELEMENT purchase (order_id, cust_id?, amount, pan, expdate, crypt_type,
dynamic_descriptor?, cust_info?, avs_info?, cvd_info?, recur?, cof_info?,
installment_info?, wallet_indicator?, foreign_indicator?)>
```



**Core connection object fields (all API transactions)**

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits      | Description  |
|--------------------------|----------------------|--|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | <i>String</i><br>N/A | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup  |
| API token<br><api_token> | <i>String</i><br>N/A | <p>Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation</p> <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

**Optional connection object field**

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits              | Description  |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| status check<br><status_check> | <i>Boolean</i><br>true/false | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required</p> </div> |

**Purchase with Recurring Billing transaction request fields – Required**

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
| order ID      | <i>String</i>   | Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every |

| Variable Name                                     | Type and Limits   | Description   |
|---|---|---|
| <order_id>  | 50-character alpha-numeric-A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces   | Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.<br><br>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction. |
| amount  | <i>String</i>   | Transaction dollar amount   |
| <amount>  | 10-character decimal<br><br>Up to 7 digits (dollars) + decimal point (.) + 2 digits (cents) after the decimal point<br><br><b>EXAMPLE:</b> 1234567.89 | This must contain at least 3 digits, two of which are penny values<br><br>Minimum allowable value = \$0.01, maximum allowable value = \$9999999.99  |
| credit card number<br><br><pan >                  | <i>String</i><br><br>max 20-character alpha-numeric   | Credit card number, usually 16 digits—field can be maximum 20 digits in support of future expansion of card number ranges.<br><br>Carries the token for network tokenization transactions.  |
| expiry date<br><br><expdate>                      | <i>String</i><br><br>4-character alphanumeric<br><br>YYMM   | Expiry date of the credit card, in YYMM format.<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> This is the reverse of the MMY date format that is presented on the card.   |
| electronic commerce indicator<br><br><crypt_type> | <i>String</i><br><br>1-character alphanumeric   | Describes the category of e-commerce transaction being processed. Allowable values are:<br><br>1 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Single<br>2 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Recurring<br>3 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Instalment                                   |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description  |
|---------------|-----------------|--|
|               |                 | <p>4 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Unknown classification</p> <p>5 – Authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</p> <p>6 – Non-authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</p> <p>7 – SSL-enabled merchant</p> <p><b>In Credential on File transactions where the request field e-commerce indicator is also being sent:</b> the allowable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for <b>payment indicator</b>, as follows:</p> <p>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = U, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> |

### Purchase with Recurring Billing transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name                              | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|--|--|---|
| customer ID<br><cust_id>                   | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>50-character alphanumeric</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b><br/>Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>&lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \</p> </div> | <p>Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier</p> <p>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center</p> |
| dynamic descriptor<br><dynamic_descriptor> | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>20-character alphanumeric</p>  | <p>Merchant-defined description sent on a per-transaction basis that will appear on the credit card statement</p>           |

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|---|--|--|
|   | <p>total of 22 characters including your merchant name and separator</p> <div> <b>NOTE:</b><br/>           Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>           &lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \         </div> | <p>appended to the merchant's business name</p> <p>Dependent on the card issuer, the statement will typically show the dynamic descriptor appended to the merchant's existing business name separated by the "/" character; additional characters will be truncated</p> <div> <b>NOTE:</b> The 22-character maximum limit must take the "/" into account as one of the characters         </div>   |
| <p>wallet indicator</p> <p>&lt;wallet_indicator&gt;</p> | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>3-character alphanumeric</p>   | <p>Indicates when a card number has been collected via a digital wallet, such as in Apple Pay, Google Pay™, Visa Checkout and Mastercard MasterPass, or via network tokenization from the card brand.</p> <p>Required for Apple Pay, Google Pay™ transactions whereby you are using your own API to decrypt the payload</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <p>APP – Apple Pay In-App</p> <p>APW – Apple Pay on the Web</p> <p>GPP – Google Pay™ In-App</p> <p>GPW – Google Pay™ Web</p> <p>VCO – Visa Checkout</p> <p>MMP – Mastercard MasterPass</p> <div> <b>NOTE:</b> Please note that if this field is included to indicate Apple Pay or Google Pay™, then Convenience Fee is not sup-         </div> |

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits          | Description  |
|---|--------------------------|--|
|   |                          | <p>ported.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Network tokenization wallet indicators are not in the API call but are in the merchant resource centre (MRC).</p> |
| <p>Customer Information</p> <p>&lt;cust_info&gt;</p> <p>For information on request fields for this object, see <a href="#">xrefHere</a></p> | <p>Object</p> <p>N/A</p> | <p>Contains fields that describe miscellaneous customer information, billing and shipping information, and item information</p>                  |
| <p>AVS Information</p> <p>&lt;avs_info&gt;</p> <p>For information on request fields for this object, see <a href="#">xrefHere</a></p>       | <p>Object</p> <p>N/A</p> | <p>Contains fields applying to the Address Verification Service (AVS) e-fraud tool</p>   |
| <p>CVD Information</p> <p>&lt;cvd_info&gt;</p> <p>For information on request fields for this object, see <a href="#">xrefHere</a></p>       | <p>Object</p> <p>N/A</p> | <p>Contains fields related to the Card Validation Digits e-fraud tool</p>  |
| <p>Recurring Billing</p> <p>&lt;recur&gt;</p> <p>For information on request fields for this object, see <a href="#">xrefHere</a></p>        | <p>Object</p> <p>N/A</p> | <p>Contains fields related to Recurring Billing</p>  |
| <p>Credential on File Information</p> <p>&lt;cof_info&gt;</p>   | <p>Object</p> <p>N/A</p> | <p>Required when storing cardholder credentials or using these credentials in subsequent transactions.</p>                                       |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description |
|---------------|-----------------|-------------|
|---------------|-----------------|-------------|

For information on request fields for this object, see [xrefHere](#)

### Recurring Billing object request fields

| Variable Name                    | Type and Limits                          | Description   |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| recur unit<br><recur_unit>       | <i>String</i><br>day, week, month or eom | Unit to be used as a basis for the interval<br><br>Works in conjunction with the period variable to define the billing frequency  |
| start now<br><start_now>         | <i>String</i><br>true/false              | Set to true if a charge will be made against the card immediately; otherwise set to false<br><br>When set to false, use Card Verification prior to sending the Purchase with Recurring Billing and Credential on File objects |
|                                  |  | <b>NOTE:</b> Amount to be billed immediately can differ from the subsequent recurring amounts   |
| start date<br><start_date>       | <i>String</i><br>YYYYMMDD format         | Date of the first future recurring billing transaction; this must be a date in the future<br><br>If an additional charge will be made immediately, the start now variable must be set to true                                 |
| number of recurs<br><num_recurs> | <i>String</i><br>numeric<br>1-999        | The number of times that the transaction must recur   |
| period<br><period>               | <i>String</i><br>numeric                 | Number of recur unit intervals that must pass between recurring billings  |

| Variable Name                      | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|------------------------------------|--|---|
|                                    | 1-999  |   |
| recurring amount<br><recur_amount> | <i>String</i><br><br>10-character decimal, minimum three digits<br><br>Up to 7 digits (dollars) + decimal point (.) + 2 digits (cents) after the decimal point<br><br><div>EXAMPLE: 1234567.89</div> | Dollar amount of the recurring transaction<br><br>This amount will be billed on the start date, and then billed repeatedly based on the interval defined by period and recur unit |

### 10.3 Recurring Billing Update

After you have set up a Recurring Billing transaction series, you can change some of the details of the series as long as it has not yet completed the preset recurring duration (i.e., it hasn't terminated yet).

Before sending a Recurring Billing Update transaction that updates the credit card number, you must send a Card Verification request. This requirement does not apply if you are only updating the schedule or amount.

#### Things to Consider:

- When completing the update recurring billing portion please keep in mind that the recur bill dates cannot be changed to have an end date greater than 10 years from today and cannot be changed to have an end date end today or earlier.

#### Core connection object fields (all API transactions)

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits          | Description   |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|---|
| store ID<br><store_id>   | <i>String</i><br><br>N/A | Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup               |
| API token<br><api_token> | <i>String</i><br><br>N/A | Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
|               |                 | <p>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:</p> <p>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> <p>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a></p> |

#### Optional connection object field

| Variable Name                                   | Type and Limits                         | Description  |
|---|---|--|
| <p>status check</p> <p>&lt;status_check&gt;</p> | <p><i>Boolean</i></p> <p>true/false</p> | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required</p> </div> |

#### Recurring Billing Update transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name                           | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|---|--|--|
| <p>order ID</p> <p>&lt;order_id&gt;</p> | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>50-character alphanumeric-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces</p> | <p>Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.</p> <p>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as</p> |



| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description                       |
|---------------|-----------------|-----------------------------------|
|               |                 | that of the original transaction. |

### Recurring Billing Update transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name                      | Type and Limits   | Description   |
|------------------------------------|---|---|
| customer ID<br><cust_id>           | <i>String</i><br>50-character alphanumeric<br><div> <b>NOTE:</b><br/>           Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>           &lt; &gt; \$ % = ? ^ { } [ ] \         </div>                             | Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier<br><br>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center  |
| credit card number<br><pan>        | <i>String</i><br>max 20-character alphanumeric  | Credit card number, usually 16 digits —field can be maximum 20 digits in support of future expansion of card number ranges.<br><br>Carries the token for network tokenization transactions. |
| expiry date<br><expdate>           | <i>String</i><br>4-character alphanumeric<br>YYMM   | Expiry date of the credit card, in YYMM format.<br><br><div> <b>NOTE:</b> This is the reverse of the MMY Y date format that is presented on the card.         </div>                        |
| recurring amount<br><recur_amount> | <i>String</i><br>10-character decimal, minimum three digits<br><br>Up to 7 digits (dollars) + decimal point (.) + 2 digits (cents) after the decimal point<br><br><div> <b>EXAMPLE:</b> 1234567.89         </div> | Dollar amount of the recurring transaction<br><br>This amount will be billed on the start date, and then billed repeatedly based on the interval defined by period and recur unit           |
| add number of recurs               | <i>String</i>   | Increments a specified number of  |

| Variable Name                                 | Type and Limits                               | Description  |
|---|---|--|
| <add_num_rekurs>                              | 3-character numeric<br>1-999                  | transactions to the current remaining number of recurring transactions<br><br>Can be used if a customer decides to extend a membership or subscription<br><br>Must be a positive number, and therefore cannot be used to decrement the number of remaining transactions; for decrementing, use change number of recurs |
| change number of recurs<br><total_num_rekurs> | <i>String</i><br>3-character numeric<br>1-999 | Replaces the current remaining number of recurring transactions<br><br>If you only need to increment the number of recurring transactions, use add number of recurs instead  |
| hold recurring billing<br><hold>              | <i>Boolean</i><br>true/false                  | Temporarily pauses recurring billing<br><br>While a transaction is on hold, it is not billed for the recurring amount; however, the number of remaining recurs continues to be decremented during that time  |
| terminate recurring billing<br><terminate>    | <i>Boolean</i><br>true/false                  | Terminates recurring billing<br><br>Once terminated, a recurring billing transaction cannot be reactivated; a new Purchase with Recurring Billing transaction must be submitted  |
| Credential on File Information<br><cof_info>  | <i>Object</i><br>N/A                          | Required when storing cardholder credentials or using these credentials in subsequent transactions.  |

## 10.4 Recurring Billing Response Fields and Codes

Table 2 outlines the response fields that are part of recurring billing. Some are available when you set up recurring billing (such as with a Purchase transaction), and some are available when you update an

existing transaction with the Recurring Billing transaction.

### Receipt object definition

**Table 2: Recurring Billing response fields**

| Value   | Type   | Limits              | Get method |
|---|--|---------------------|------------|
|   | Description  |                     |            |
| Transaction object with Recurring Billing response fields |  |                     |            |
| Response code   | String   | 3-character numeric |            |
|   | See Table 3: for a description of possible response codes. |                     |            |
| Recur success   | String   | TBD                 |            |
|   | Indicates whether the transaction successfully registered  |                     |            |
| Recur update object response fields                       |  |                     |            |
| Recur update success                                      | String   | true/false          |            |
|   | Indicates whether the transaction successfully updated.    |                     |            |
| Next recur date   | String   | yyyy-mm-dd format   |            |
|   | Indicates when the transaction will be billed again.       |                     |            |
| Recur end date  | String   | yyyy-mm-dd format   |            |
|   | Indicates when the Recurring Billing Transaction will end. |                     |            |

The Recur Update response is a 3-digit numeric value. The following is a list of all possible responses after a Recur Update transaction has been sent.

**Table 3: Recur update response codes**

| Request Value | Definition  |
|---------------|---|
| 001           | Recurring transaction successfully updated (optional: terminated) |
| 983           | Cannot find the previous transaction                              |
| 984           | Data error: (optional: field name)                                |
| 985           | Invalid number of recurs  |
| 986           | Incomplete: timed out   |
| null          | Error: Malformed XML  |

## 10.5 Credential on File and Recurring Billing

**NOTE:** The value of the **payment indicator** field must be **R** when sending Recurring Billing transactions.

For Recurring Billing transactions which are set to start **immediately**:

1. Send a Purchase transaction request with both the Recurring Billing and Credential on File info objects (with Recurring Billing object field **start now** = true)

For Recurring Billing transactions which are set to start on a **future** date:

1. Send Card Verification transaction request including the Credential on File info object to get the Issuer ID
2. Send Purchase transaction request with the Recur and Credential on File info objects included

For updating a Recurring Billing series where you are updating the card number (does not apply if you are only modifying the schedule or amount in a recurring series):

1. Send Card Verification request including the Credential on File info object to get the Issuer ID
2. Send a Recurring Billing Update transaction

## 11 Customer Information

- 11.1 Customer Information Object
- 11.2 Customer Info Object – Billing Information
- 11.3 Customer Info Object – Shipping Information
- 11.4 Customer Information Object – Items

### 11.1 Customer Information Object

The Customer Information object offers a number of fields to be submitted as part of the financial transaction, and stored by Moneris. These details may be viewed in the future in the Merchant Resource Center.

The following transactions support the Customer Information object :

- Purchase (Basic and Vault)
- Pre-Authorization (Basic and Vault)

#### XML transaction object

```
<cust_info>
```

#### Customer Information object definition

```
<!-- start Cust Info -->

<!ELEMENT cust_info (billing, shipping, email, instructions, item+)>
<!ELEMENT billing (first_name, last_name, company_name, address, city, province, postal_code,
country, phone_number, fax, tax1, tax2, tax3, shipping_cost)>
<!ELEMENT shipping (first_name, last_name, company_name, address, city, province, postal_
code, country, phone_number, fax, tax1, tax2, tax3, shipping_cost)>
<!ELEMENT first_name (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT last_name (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT company_name (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT address (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT city (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT province (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT postal_code (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT country (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT phone_number (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT fax (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT tax1 (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT tax2 (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT tax3 (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT shipping_cost (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT email (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT instructions (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT item (name, quantity, product_code, extended_amount)>
<!ELEMENT name (#PCDATA)>
```

```

<!ELEMENT quantity (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT product_code (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT extended_amount (#PCDATA)>

```

### Customer Information object request fields – Required

| Variable Name                      | Type and Limits                             | Description  |
|------------------------------------|---|--|
| billing information<br><billing>   | <i>Object</i><br>N/A                        | Sub-object of the customer information object; contains fields related to shipping |
| shipping information<br><shipping> | <i>Object</i><br>N/A                        | Sub-object of the customer information object; contains fields related to shipping |
| email<br><email>                   | <i>String</i><br>60-character alphanumeric  | Customer's email address   |
| instructions<br><instructions>     | <i>String</i><br>100-character alphanumeric | Instructions or notes  |

## 11.2 Customer Info Object – Billing Information

Billing Information and Shipping Information sub-objects contain the same types of request fields, in order to enable different information to be sent for billing and shipping.

### Billing Information sub-object request fields

| Variable Name                  | Type and Limits                            | Description             |
|--------------------------------|--|-------------------------|
| first name<br><first_name>     | <i>String</i><br>30-character alphanumeric | Customer first name     |
| last name<br><last_name>       | <i>String</i><br>30-character alphanumeric | Customer last name      |
| company name<br><company_name> | <i>String</i><br>50-character alphanumeric | Customer's company name |
| address                        | <i>String</i>                              | Customer address        |

| Variable Name              | Type and Limits           | Description  |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|--|
| <address>                  | 70-character alphanumeric |  |
| city                       | <i>String</i>             | Customer city  |
| <city>                     | 30-character alphanumeric |  |
| province/state             | <i>String</i>             | Customer province or state                             |
| <province>                 | 30-character alphanumeric |  |
| postal/ZIP code            | <i>String</i>             | Customer postal or ZIP code                            |
| <postal_code>              | 30-character alphanumeric |  |
| country                    | <i>String</i>             | Customer's country                                     |
| <country>                  | 30-character alphanumeric |  |
| phone number               | <i>String</i>             | Customer's phone number                                |
| <phone>                    | 30-character alphanumeric |  |
| fax number                 | <i>String</i>             | Customer fax number                                    |
| <fax>                      | 30-character alphanumeric |  |
| federal tax                | <i>String</i>             | Dollar amount of federal tax                           |
| <tax1>                     | 10-character alphanumeric | Not used to calculate total amount                     |
| provincial/state tax       | <i>String</i>             | Dollar amount of provincial or state tax               |
| <tax2>                     | 10-character alphanumeric | Not used to calculate total amount                     |
| county/local/specialty tax | <i>String</i>             | Dollar amount of county, local or specialty tax amount |
| <tax3>                     | 10-character alphanumeric | Not used to calculate total amount                     |
| shipping cost              | <i>String</i>             | Dollar amount of fees charged for shipping             |
| <shipping_cost>            | 10-character alphanumeric | Not used to calculate total amount                     |

## 11.3 Customer Info Object – Shipping Information

Billing Information and Shipping Information sub-objects contain the same types of request fields, in order to enable different information to be sent for billing and shipping.

### Shipping Information sub-object request fields

| Variable Name                    | Type and Limits                            | Description  |
|----------------------------------|--|--|
| first name<br><first_name>       | <i>String</i><br>30-character alphanumeric | Customer first name  |
| last name<br><last_name>         | <i>String</i><br>30-character alphanumeric | Customer last name   |
| company name<br><company_name>   | <i>String</i><br>50-character alphanumeric | Sub-object of the customer information object; contains fields related to shipping |
| address<br><address>             | <i>String</i><br>70-character alphanumeric | Customer address   |
| city<br><city>                   | <i>String</i><br>30-character alphanumeric | Customer city  |
| province/state<br><province>     | <i>String</i><br>30-character alphanumeric | Customer province or state   |
| postal/ZIP code<br><postal_code> | <i>String</i><br>30-character alphanumeric | Customer postal or ZIP code  |
| country<br><country>             | <i>String</i><br>30-character alphanumeric | Customer's country   |
| phone number<br><phone>          | <i>String</i><br>30-character alphanumeric | Customer's phone number  |
| fax number<br><fax>              | <i>String</i><br>30-character alphanumeric | Customer fax number  |



| Variable Name                        | Type and Limits                            | Description  |
|--------------------------------------|--|--|
| federal tax<br><tax1>                | <i>String</i><br>10-character alphanumeric | Dollar amount of federal tax<br>Not used to calculate total amount                           |
| province/state<br><tax2>             | <i>String</i><br>30-character alphanumeric | Customer province or state   |
| county/local/specialty tax<br><tax3> | <i>String</i><br>10-character alphanumeric | Dollar amount of county, local or specialty tax amount<br>Not used to calculate total amount |
| shipping cost<br><shipping_cost>     | <i>String</i><br>10-character alphanumeric | Dollar amount of fees charged for shipping<br>Not used to calculate total amount             |

## 11.4 Customer Information Object – Items

The Customer Information object can hold information about multiple invoice items, each one represented as their own array object, with the values encapsulated inside an <item> tag.

### Item array object request fields

| Variable Name                             | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|---|--|---|
| item name<br><name>                       | <i>String</i><br>45-character alphanumeric                           | Name of a specific item being purchased   |
| item quantity<br><quantity>               | <i>String</i><br>5-character numeric<br>1-99999                      | Number of units of a specific item being ordered<br>Must be > 0 or else the item will not be added to the item list |
| item product code<br><product_code>       | <i>String</i><br>20-character alphanumeric                           | Product code or SKU of an item being purchased  |
| item extended amount<br><extended_amount> | <i>String</i><br>10-character decimal; must contain minimum 3 digits | Unit cost, in dollars, multiplied by quantity ordered   |

| Variable Name | Type and Limits   | Description |
|---------------|---|-------------|
|               | and 2 penny values<br><br>Up to 7 digits (dollars) + decimal point (.) + 2 digits (cents) after the decimal point |             |
|               | <div>EXAMPLE: 1234567.89</div>  |             |

## 12 e-Fraud Tools

- 1 Address Verification Service
- 1 Card Validation Digits (CVD)

### 12.1 Address Verification Service (AVS)

- 12.1.1 About Address Verification Service (AVS)
- 12.1.2 AVS Information Object
- 12.1.3 AVS Response Codes

#### 12.1.1 About Address Verification Service (AVS)

Address Verification Service (AVS) is an optional fraud-prevention tool offered by issuing banks whereby a cardholder's address is submitted as part of the transaction authorization. The AVS address is then compared to the address kept on file at the issuing bank. AVS checks whether the street number, street name and zip/postal code match. The issuing bank returns an AVS result code indicating whether the data was matched successfully. Regardless of the AVS result code returned, the credit card is authorized by the issuing bank.

The response that is received from AVS verification is intended to provide added security and fraud prevention, but the response itself does not affect the completion of a transaction. Upon receiving a response, the choice to proceed with a transaction is left entirely to the merchant. The responses is **not** a strict guideline of whether a transaction will be approved or declined.

The following transactions support AVS:

- Purchase (Basic and Mag Swipe)
- Pre-Authorization (Basic)
- Re-Authorization (Basic)
- ResAddCC (Vault)
- ResUpdateCC (Vault)

**Things to Consider:**

- AVS is supported by Visa, MasterCard, American Express, Discover and JCB.
- When testing AVS, you must **only** use the Visa test card numbers 4242424242424242 or 4005554444444403, and the amounts described in the Simulator eFraud Response Codes document available at the Moneris developer portal (<https://developer-moneris.com>).
- Store ID “store5” is set up to support AVS testing.

### 12.1.2 AVS Information Object

Contains fields applying to the Address Verification Service (AVS) e-fraud tool

**XML transaction object**

```
<avs_info>
```

**AVS Information Object object definition**

```
<!ELEMENT avs_info (avs_street_number, avs_street_name, avs_zipcode)>
```

```
<!ELEMENT avs_street_number (#PCDATA)>
```

```
<!ELEMENT avs_street_name (#PCDATA)>
```

```
<!ELEMENT avs_zipcode (#PCDATA)>
```

**AVS Information Object request fields – Required**

| Variable Name                            | Type and Limits                            | Description                             |
|--|--|---|
| AVS street number<br><avs_street_number> | <i>String</i><br>19-character alphanumeric | Cardholder's address street number      |
| AVS street name<br><avs_street_name>     | <i>String</i><br>19-character alphanumeric | Cardholder's address street name        |
| AVS postal/ZIP code<br><avs_zipcode>     | <i>String</i><br>9-character alphanumeric  | Cardholder's address postal or ZIP code |

### 12.1.3 AVS Response Codes

Below is a full list of possible AVS response codes.

| Code | Visa                                    | Mastercard/Discover  | American Express/ JCB  |
|------|---|--|--|
| A    | AVS street address only (partial match) | Address matches, zip/ postal code does not                     | Billing address matches, zip/postal code does not                  |
| D    | No longer applicable to Visa            | N/A  | Customer name incorrect; zip/postal code matches                   |
| E    | N/A                                     | N/A  | Customer name incorrect, billing address and zip/postal code match |
| F    | No longer applicable to Visa            | N/A  | Customer name incorrect; billing address matches                   |
| G    | No longer applicable to Visa            | Address information not verified for international transaction | N/A  |
| K    | N/A                                     | N/A  | Customer name matches  |
| L    | N/A                                     | N/A  | Customer name and zip/postal code match                            |
| M    | No longer applicable to Visa            | N/A  | Customer name, billing address, and zip/postal code match          |
| N    | AVS non-match                           | Neither address nor zip/postal code matches                    | Billing address and zip/-postal code do not match                  |
| O    | N/A                                     | N/A  | Customer name and billing address match                            |

| Code | Visa                                     | Mastercard/Discover   | American Express/ JCB   |
|------|--|---|---|
| R    | AVS indeterminate outcome (retry)        | Retry; system unable to process   | System unavailable; retry   |
| S    | No longer applicable to Visa             | AVS currently not supported   | AVS currently not supported   |
| T    | N/A                                      | Nine-digit zip code matches; address does not match   | N/A   |
| U    | AVS unable to verify                     | No data from issuer-authorization system  | Information is unavailable  |
| W    | No longer applicable to Visa             | For U.S. addresses, nine-digit postal code matches, address does not<br><br>For addresses outside the U.S., postal code matches, address does not | Customer name, billing address, and zip/postal code are all correct matches |
| X    | No longer applicable to Visa             | For U.S. addresses, nine-digit postal code and address match<br><br>For addresses outside the U.S., postal code and address match                 | N/A   |
| Y    | AVS full match                           | Billing address and zip/postal code both match  | Billing address and zip/postal code both match                              |
| Z    | AVS zip/postal code only (partial match) | For U.S. addresses, five-digit zip code matches, address does not match   | Zip/postal code matches, billing address does not                           |

## 12.2 Card Validation Digits (CVD)

- 12.2.1 About Card Validation Digits (CVD)
- 12.2.2 Transactions Where CVD Is Required

- 12.2.3 CVD Information Object
- 12.2.4 CVD Result Codes

### 12.2.1 About Card Validation Digits (CVD)

The Card Validation Digits (CVD) value is an additional number printed on credit cards that is used as an additional check when verifying cardholder credentials during a transaction.

The response that is received from CVD verification is intended to provide added security and fraud prevention, but the response itself does not affect the completion of a transaction. Upon receiving a response, the choice whether to proceed with a transaction is left entirely to the merchant. The responses is **not** a strict guideline of which transaction will approve or decline.

The following transactions support CVD:

- Purchase (Basic, Vault and Mag Swipe)
- Pre-Authorization (Basic and Vault)
- Re-Authorization

#### Things to Consider:

- CVD is only supported by Visa, MasterCard, American Express, Discover, JCB and UnionPay.
- For UnionPay cards, the CVD response will not be returned; the issuer will approve or decline based on the CVD result.
- When testing CVD, you must **only** use the Visa test card numbers 4242424242424242 or 4005554444444403, and the amounts described in the Simulator eFraud Response Codes document available at the Moneris developer portal (<https://developer-moneris.com>).
- Test store\_id "store5" is set up to support CVD testing.

### 12.2.2 Transactions Where CVD Is Required

The Card Validation Digits (CVD) object is required in transaction requests in the following scenarios:

- Initial transactions when storing cardholder credentials in Credential on File scenarios; subsequent follow-on transactions do not use CVD

- Any Purchase, Pre-Authorization or Card Verification where you are not storing cardholder credentials

### 12.2.3 CVD Information Object

#### CVD Information object definition

```
<!-- start CVD -->  
  
<!ELEMENT cvd_info (cvd_indicator, cvd_value)>  
  
<!ELEMENT cvd_indicator (#PCDATA)>  
  
<!ELEMENT cvd_value (#PCDATA)>
```

#### CVD Info object request fields – Required

| Variable Name                    | Type and Limits               | Description  |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|--|
| CVD indicator<br><cvd_indicator> | String<br>1-character numeric | Indicates presence of CVD<br><br>Possible values:<br><br>0 – CVD value is deliberately bypassed or is not provided by the merchant<br><br>1 – CVD value is present<br><br>2 – CVD value is printed on the card, but is illegible<br><br>9 – Cardholder states that the card has no CVD |
| CVD value<br><cvd_value>         | String<br>4-character numeric | CVD value printed on card<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> The CVD value must only be passed to the Moneris Gateway. Under <b>no</b> circumstances may it be stored for subsequent uses or displayed as part of the receipt information.  |

### 12.2.4 CVD Result Codes

CVD verification is available for Visa, Mastercard, Discover, American Express, JCB and UnionPay transactions.



| Code  | Description   |
|-------|---|
| M     | Match   |
| N     | No match  |
| P     | Not processed   |
| S     | CVD should be on the card, but Merchant has indicated that CVD is not present |
| U     | Issuer is not a CVD participant   |
| Y     | Match for American Express/JCB only   |
| D     | Invalid security code for American Express or JCB only                        |
| Other | Invalid response code   |

## Appendix A Definition of Request Fields

### Core Request Fields

| Variable Name                      | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|------------------------------------|--|---|
| amount<br><amount>                 | <i>String</i><br><br>10-character decimal<br><br>Up to 7 digits (dollars) + decimal point (.) + 2 digits (cents) after the decimal point<br><br><div>EXAMPLE: 1234567.89</div> | Transaction dollar amount<br><br>This must contain at least 3 digits, two of which are penny values<br><br>Minimum allowable value = \$0.01, maximum allowable value = \$9999999.99   |
| API token<br><api_token>           | <i>String</i><br><br>N/A   | Unique alphanumeric string assigned by Moneris upon merchant account activation<br><br>To find your API token, refer to your test or production store's Admin settings in the Merchant Resource Center, at the following URLs:<br><br>Testing: <a href="https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/">https://esqa.moneris.com/mpg/</a><br><br>Production: <a href="https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/">https://www3.moneris.com/mpg/</a> |
| authorization code<br><auth_code>  | <i>String</i><br><br>8-character alphanumeric  | An authorization code required to carry out a Force Post; provided in the transaction response from the issuing bank  |
| completion amount<br><comp_amount> | <i>String</i><br><br>10-character decimal<br><br>Up to 7 digits (dollars) + decimal point (.) + 2 digits (cents) after the decimal point                                       | Dollar amount of a Pre-Authorization Completion transaction, which may differ from the original amount authorized in the Pre-Authorization  |

| Variable Name                                 | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|---|--|--|
|   | <div>EXAMPLE: 1234567.89</div>   |  |
| credit card number<br><pan>                   | <i>String</i><br>max 20-character alpha-numeric  | Credit card number, usually 16 digits —field can be maximum 20 digits in support of future expansion of card number ranges.<br><br>Carries the token for network tokenization transactions.  |
| customer ID<br><cust_id>                      | <i>String</i><br>50-character alphanumeric<br><br><div>NOTE:<br/>Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>&lt;&gt;\$%=?^{}[]\</div>  | Merchant-defined field that can be used as an identifier<br><br>Searchable from the Moneris Merchant Resource Center   |
| dynamic descriptor<br><dynamic_descriptor>    | <i>String</i><br>20-character alphanumeric<br><br>total of 22 characters including your merchant name and separator<br><br><div>NOTE:<br/>Some special characters are not allowed:<br/>&lt;&gt;\$%=?^{}[]\</div> | Merchant-defined description sent on a per-transaction basis that will appear on the credit card statement appended to the merchant's business name<br><br>Dependent on the card issuer, the statement will typically show the dynamic descriptor appended to the merchant's existing business name separated by the "/" character; additional characters will be truncated<br><br><div>NOTE: The 22-character maximum limit must take the "/" into account as one of the characters</div> |
| electronic commerce indicator<br><crypt_type> | <i>String</i><br>1-character alphanumeric  | Describes the category of e-commerce transaction being processed. Allowable values are:<br><br>1 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Single<br>2 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Recurring   |

| Variable Name                | Type and Limits                                   | Description  |
|------------------------------|---|--|
|                              |   | <p>3 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Installment</p> <p>4 – Mail Order / Telephone Order—Unknown classification</p> <p>5 – Authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</p> <p>6 – Non-authenticated e-commerce transaction (3-D Secure)</p> <p>7 – SSL-enabled merchant</p> <p><b>In Credential on File transactions where the request field e-commerce indicator is also being sent:</b> the allowable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for <b>payment indicator</b>, as follows:</p> <p>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = U, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> |
| expiry date<br><expdate>     | <i>String</i><br>4-character alphanumeric<br>YYMM | Expiry date of the credit card, in YYMM format. <div> <b>NOTE:</b> This is the reverse of the MMY Y date format that is presented on the card. </div>  |
| is estimated<br>is_estimated | <i>Boolean</i><br>true/false                      | Indicates if this preauthorization is using an estimated amount. Estimations allow for incrementing the amount held via subsequent incrementalAuth requests. Defaults to   |

| Variable Name                            | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|--|--|--|
|  |  | <p>false.</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Please note that if this field is true, the preauthorization is only eligible for a single Preauthorization Completion. Any completion sent for partial completion is treated as a full completion (ship_indicator= P is treated as = F when is_estimated= true on the original preauth)</p> </div>            |
| foreign indicator<br><foreign_indicator> | <i>Boolean</i><br><br>true or false  | Used to identify domestic transactions processed by a marketplace merchant that is in a different country.   |
| order ID<br><order_id>                   | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alphanumeric-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces      | <p>Merchant-defined transaction identifier that must be unique for every Purchase, Pre-Authorization and Independent Refund transaction. No two transactions of these types may have the same order ID.</p> <p>For Refund, Completion and Purchase Correction transactions, the order ID must be the same as that of the original transaction.</p> |
| original order ID<br><orig_order_id>     | <i>String</i><br><br>50-character alphanumeric<br>a-Z A-Z 0-9 _ - : . @ spaces | Order ID from the original Pre-Authorization transaction, used as a reference to retrieve the original payment details   |
| shipping indicator<br><ship_indicator>   | <i>String</i><br><br>1-character alphanumeric                                  | <p>Used to identify completion transactions that require multiple shipments, also referred to as multiple completions</p> <p>By default, if shipping indicator is not sent, the Pre-Authorization Completion is listed as final</p> <p>To indicate that the Pre-Authorization Completion is to be left open</p>                                    |

| Variable Name                                       | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|---|--|--|
|   |  | <p>by the issuer as supplemental shipments or completions are pending, submit shipping indicator with a value of P</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <p>P – Partial</p> <p>F – Final</p>   |
| <p>status check</p> <p>&lt;status_check&gt;</p>     | <p><i>Boolean</i></p> <p>true/false</p>  | <p>Checks whether a previously sent transaction was processed successfully</p> <p>To send a status check request, resend the original transaction with all the same request parameter values, except with status check = true</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Only use once per transaction and within two minutes of the original transaction request; if the status check request times out, do not send again, as additional investigation is required</p> </div> |
| <p>store ID</p> <p>&lt;store_id&gt;</p>             | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>N/A</p>  | <p>Unique identifier provided by Moneris upon merchant account setup</p>   |
| <p>transaction number</p> <p>&lt;txn_number&gt;</p> | <p><i>String</i></p> <p>255-character, alphanumeric, hyphens or underscores</p> <p>variable length</p> | <p>Used to reference the original transaction when performing a follow-on transaction (i.e., Pre-Authorization Completion, Purchase Correction or Refund)</p> <p>This value is returned in the response of the original transaction</p> <p>Pre-Authorization Completion: references a Pre-Authorization</p> <p>Refund/Purchase Correction: references a Purchase or Pre-Authorization Completion</p>   |

| Variable Name                          | Type and Limits                           | Description  |
|--|---|--|
| wallet indicator<br><wallet_indicator> | <i>String</i><br>3-character alphanumeric | <p>Indicates when a card number has been collected via a digital wallet, such as in Apple Pay, Google Pay™, Visa Checkout and Mastercard MasterPass, or via network tokenization from the card brand.</p> <p>Required for Apple Pay, Google Pay™ transactions whereby you are using your own API to decrypt the payload</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <p>APP –Apple Pay In-App</p> <p>APW – Apple Pay on the Web</p> <p>GPP – Google Pay™ In-App</p> <p>GPW – Google Pay™ Web</p> <p>VCO –Visa Checkout</p> <p>MMP – Mastercard MasterPass</p> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Please note that if this field is included to indicate Apple Pay or Google Pay™, then Convenience Fee is not supported.</p> </div> <div> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Network tokenization wallet indicators are not in the API call but are in the merchant resource centre (MRC).</p> </div> |

## A.1 Definition of Request Fields – Admin Transactions

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits | Description                         |
|--------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------------------|
| electronic cash register | <i>String</i>   | Identification number assigned to a |

| Variable Name                     | Type and Limits | Description   |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------|---|
| (ECR) number<br><xmlvariableHere> | N/A             | particular electronic cash register;<br>provided by Moneris |

## A.2 Definition of Request Fields – Vault

Request fields applicable to Vault transactions

| Variable Name                        | Type and Limits   | Description   |
|--------------------------------------|---|---|
| data key<br><data_key>               | <i>String</i><br>25-character alphanumeric                  | Unique identifier for a Vault profile,<br>and used in future Vault financial<br>transactions to associate a transaction<br>with that profile<br><br>Data key is generated by Moneris and<br>returned to you in the Receipt object<br>when the profile is first registered |
| data key format<br><data_key_format> | <i>String</i><br>2-character alphanumeric                   | Specifies the data key format being<br>returned<br><br>If left blank, data key format will<br>default to 25-character alphanumeric<br><br>Possible values:<br><br>0 – 25 character alphanumeric data key<br><br>0U – unique 25-character alphanumeric data<br>key         |
| duration<br><duration>               | <i>String</i><br>3-character numeric<br>maximum 900 seconds | Amount of time the temporary token<br>should be available   |
| email address<br><email>             | <i>String</i><br>30-character alphanumeric                  | Customer's email address<br><br>Can be sent in when creating or updat-<br>ing a Vault profile   |
| note<br><note>                       | <i>String</i><br>30-character alphanumeric                  | Used for any supplementary inform-<br>ation related to the customer   |



| Variable Name | Type and Limits           | Description  |
|---------------|---------------------------|--|
|               |                           | Can be sent in when creating or updating a Vault profile |
| phone number  | <i>String</i>             | Customer's phone number                                  |
| <phone>       | 30-character alphanumeric | Can be sent in when creating or updating a Vault profile |

### A.3 Definition of Request Fields – 3-D Secure 2.2

| Variable Name        | Type and Limits           | Description                                      |
|----------------------|---------------------------|--|
| billing address      | <i>String</i>             | Cardholder billing address                       |
| bill_address1        | 50-character alphanumeric |  |
| billing city         | <i>String</i>             | Cardholder billing city                          |
| bill_city            | 50-character alphanumeric |  |
| billing country      | <i>String</i>             | Defined as 3 digit country code ISO 3166-1       |
| bill_country         | 3-character alphanumeric  |  |
| billing postal code  | <i>String</i>             | Cardholder billing postal code                   |
| bill_postal_code     | 16-character alphanumeric |  |
| billing province     | <i>String</i>             | Cardholder province or state                     |
| bill_province        | 3-character alphanumeric  | Defined in country subdivision ISO 3166-2        |
| browser java enabled | <i>String</i>             | Indicates whether Java is enabled in the browser |
| browser_java_enabled | 1-character alphabetic    | Allowable values:<br>T = True<br>F = False       |
| browser language     | <i>String</i>             | As defined in IETF BCP47                         |
| browser_language     | 8-character alphanumeric  |  |

| Variable Name                                  | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|--|--|--|
| browser screen height<br>browser_screen_height | <i>String</i><br>6-character numeric   | Pixel height of cardholder screen  |
| browser screen width<br>browser_screen_width   | <i>String</i><br>6-character numeric   | Pixel width of cardholder screen   |
| browser user agent<br>browser_user_agent       | <i>String</i><br>2048-character alpha-numeric  | Browser User Agent   |
| cardholder name<br>cardholder_name             | <i>String</i><br>45-character alphanumeric<br><b>NOTE:</b> Accented characters are not allowable | Name of the cardholder   |
| challenge window size<br>challengeWindowSize   | <i>String</i><br>2-character alphanumeric  | Relates to the rendering of the ACS challenge within the browser.<br><br>Allowable values:<br><br>01 = 250 x 400<br><br>02 = 390 x 400<br><br>03 = 500 x 600<br><br>04 = 600 x 400<br><br>05 = Full screen |
| cres<br>cres                                   | <i>String</i><br>200-character alphanumeric  | Response data from the challenge   |
| currency<br>currency                           | <i>String</i><br>3-character numeric   | ISO 4217 3 digit currency code (CAD = 124, USD = 840)<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> This field should not be sent unless Multi Currency Pricing is enabled on your merchant account                                  |
| DS transaction ID                              | <i>String</i>  | Refers to the DSTransID in the   |

| Variable Name   | Type and Limits                             | Description   |
|---|---|---|
| ds_trans_id   | 36-character alphanumeric                   | response of the previous 3DS authentication.  |
| <b>NOTE:</b> Only used in financial transactions using 3rd Party 3-D Secure services. |   |   |
| decoupled request async URL   | <i>String</i><br>256-character alphanumeric | Your URL where Moneris will POST the response back from ACS. Moneris reattempts 3 times to POST the response.   |
| decoupled_request_async_url   |   |   |
| decoupled request indicator   | <i>String</i>                               | Whether the request utilizes Decoupled Authentication or not, if the ACS confirms its use.  |
| decoupled_request_indicator   | 1-character alphabetic                      | Y = Decoupled Authentication is supported and preferred if challenge is necessary<br><br>N = Do not use Decoupled Authentication (Default)  |
| decoupled request max time  | <i>String</i>                               | The maximum minutes that Moneris waits for an ACS to provide results.   |
| decoupled_request_max_time  | 5-character numeric                         | Numeric values between 1 and 10080. The max is equivalent to 7 days.  |
| device channel  | <i>String</i>                               | The interface used to initiate the authentication:  |
| device_channel  | 2-character numeric                         | 02 = Browser (BRW)<br><br>03 = 3DS Requestor Initiated (3RI)  |
| email   | <i>String</i>                               | Cardholder email address  |
| email   | 254-character alphanumeric                  | <b>NOTE:</b> This field is not mandatory, but it is required. It is highly recommended to provide the cardholder's email address. Lack of providing the cardholder's address, might increase the risk of rejects. |

| Variable Name  | Type and Limits                      | Description   |
|--|--------------------------------------|---|
| message category<br>message_category                         | String<br>2-character numeric        | Whether the authentication request is for a payment or non-payment use:<br><br>01 = payment authentication (PA)<br><br>02 = non-payment authentication (NPA)  |
| notification URL<br>notification_url                         | String<br>256-character alphanumeric | Notification URL for receiving the 3DS Method POST response from the issuer ACS.  |
| prior request ref<br>prior_request_auth_ref                  | String<br>36-character alphanumeric  | Refers to the 3DS ACS Transaction ID in the response of the previous 3DS authentication.  |
| prior request auth method<br>prior_request_auth_method       | String<br>2-character numeric        | Mechanism used by the cardholder to authenticate in the previous 3DS authentication:<br><br>01 = Frictionless authentication<br><br>02 = Challenge authentication<br><br>03 = AVS verified<br><br>04 = Other issuer methods |
| prior request auth timestamp<br>prior_request_auth_timestamp | String<br>12-character numeric       | Date and time in UTC of the prior cardholder authentication. Found in the previous 3DS authentication response as 3DS Auth TimeStamp.<br><br>Format is YYYYMMDDHHMM.  |
| recurring expiry<br>recurring_expiry                         | String<br>8-character numeric        | End date after which no further recurring transactions shall be performed. Format is YYYYMMDD.  |
| recurring frequency<br>recurring_frequency                   | String<br>4-character numeric        | The minimum number of days between recurring transactions. Numeric values between 1 and 9999, leading zeroes accepted.  |
| request challenge  | String                               | Indicates whether a browser-based   |

| Variable Name                     | Type and Limits                     | Description   |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| request_challenge                 | 2-character numeric                 | challenge is requested for this transaction. Standard is "01" <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>01 = No preference</li> <li>02 = No challenge requested</li> <li>03 = Challenge requested: 3DS Requestor Preference</li> <li>04 = Challenge requested: Mandate</li> </ul>          |
| request type<br>request_type      | String<br>2-character alphanumeric  | Indicates the type of browser-based authentication request:<br><br>01 = cardholder initiated payment<br>02 = recurring transaction  |
| shipping address<br>ship_address1 | String<br>50-character alphanumeric | Shipping destination address  |
| ri indicator<br>ri_indicator      | String<br>2-character numeric       | The type of 3DS Requestor Initiated (3RI) request:<br><br>01 = Recurring<br>02 = Installment<br>03 = Add Card<br>04 = Maintain Card Information<br>05 = Account verification<br>06 = Split/Delayed Shipment<br>07 = Top-up<br>08 = Mail Order<br>09 = Telephone Order<br>10 = Whitelist |

**NOTE:** Visa Secure only support ri\_Indicator = 6 or 11 for Payment Transaction and ri Indicator = 3, 4, 5 and 10 for Non Payment Transaction

| Variable Name                                       | Type and Limits                     | Description   |
|---|-------------------------------------|---|
|   |                                     | 11 = Other Payment  |
| shipping city<br>ship_city                          | String<br>50-character alphanumeric | Shipping destination city   |
| shipping country<br>ship_country                    | String<br>3-character alphanumeric  | Shipping destination country<br>Defined as 3-digit country code in ISO 3166-1   |
| shipping postal code<br>ship_postal_code            | String<br>16-character alphanumeric | Shipping destination postal or ZIP code   |
| shipping province<br>ship_province                  | String<br>3-character alphanumeric  | Shipping destination province<br>Defined in country subdivision ISO 3166-2  |
| 3DS completion indicator<br>three_ds_completion_ind | String<br>1-character alphanumeric  | indicates whether 3ds method<br>MpiCardLookup was successfully completed<br><br>Allowable values:<br><br>Y = Successfully completed<br><br>N = Did not successfully complete<br><br>U = Unavailable |

## A.4 Definition of Request Fields – PBB Info Object

This table includes fields for the Pay by Bank object PBB\_info included in financial authorization transactions, such as a Purchase or Preauthorization. This object contains the necessary fields to link the authorization to the consent

For the fields used Pay By Bank authentication calls (Get Access Token, Get Consent Data, and Get Payment Transaction Data), refer to "Definition of Request Fields – Pay By Bank" on the facing page.

| Variable Name            | Type and Limits                      | Description  |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|--|
| Consent ID<br>consent_id | String<br>36-character alphanumeric, | Consent token obtained from the Interac Konek SDK. Used to authenticate PBB connections. |

| Variable Name  | Type and Limits                     | Description   |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|---|
|                | variable                            |   |
| Payment Method | <i>String</i>                       | The type of account for the payment   |
| payment_method | 27-character alphanumeric, variable | BANK_ACCOUNT_SAVINGS, BANK_ACCOUNT_CHEQUING, BANK_ACCOUNT_LINE_OF_CREDIT, VISA_CREDIT, VISA_DEBIT, MASTERCARD_CREDIT, MASTERCARD_DEBIT, AMEX_CREDIT |

## A.5 Definition of Request Fields – Pay By Bank

This table includes fields for the Get Access Token, Get Consent Data, and Get Payment Transaction Data API calls used in the authentication flow for a Pay By Bank transaction.

For the fields used in the PBB\_info object of a financial transaction, such as a Purchase or Preauthorization, refer instead to "Definition of Request Fields – PBB Info Object" on the previous page

| Variable Name    | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|------------------|--|--|
| Amount           | <i>Number</i>  | Amount for use in subsequent financial transaction.                                      |
| amount           | 10-character numeric, variable<br><br>minimum: 0.01<br><br>maximum: 9999999.99 |  |
| Consent ID       | <i>String</i>  | Consent token obtained from the Interac Konek SDK. Used to authenticate PBB connections. |
| consent_id       | 36-character alphanumeric, variable  |  |
| Currency         | <i>String</i>  | ISO 4217 currency code used for the payment. Possible values                             |
| currency         | 3-character alphanumeric   | CAD  |
| Transaction Type | <i>String</i>  | Transaction types.   |
| transaction_type | 9-character alphanumeric, variable   | Enums: SINGLE, SPLIT, RECURRING  |

## A.6 Definition of Request Fields – Information Objects

Information objects are nested objects within transactions that provide additional features, in transactions where they are applicable.

For each object, there are additional request fields contained within the object.

### Information object request fields – top level

| Variable Name                                 | Type and Limits      | Description  |
|---|----------------------|--|
| AVS Information<br><avs_info>                 | <i>Object</i><br>N/A | Contains fields applying to the Address Verification Service (AVS) e-fraud tool  |
| Credential on File Information<br><cof_info>  | <i>Object</i><br>N/A | Required when storing cardholder credentials or using these credentials in subsequent transactions.                      |
| Convenience Fee Information<br><convfee_info> | <i>Object</i><br>N/A | Contains fields related to the Convenience Fee feature   |
| Customer Information<br><cust_info>           | <i>Object</i><br>N/A | Contains fields that describe miscellaneous customer information, billing and shipping information, and item information |
| CVD Information<br><cvd_info>                 | <i>Object</i><br>N/A | Contains fields related to the Card Validation Digits e-fraud tool   |
| Recurring Billing<br><recur>                  | <i>Object</i><br>N/A | Contains fields related to Recurring Billing   |

## A.7 Definition of Request Fields – Credential on File

| Variable Name | Type and Limits | Description   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
| issuer ID     | <i>String</i>   | Unique identifier for the cardholder's stored credentials |



| Variable Name                            | Type and Limits                              | Description  |
|--|--|--|
| <issuer_id>                              | 15-character alphanumeric<br>variable length | <p>Sent back in the response from the card brand when processing a Credential on File transaction</p> <p>If the cardholder's credentials are being stored for the first time, and the issuer ID was returned in the response, you must save the issuer ID on your system to use in subsequent Credential on File transactions (applies to merchant-initiated transactions only)</p> <p>The issuer ID must be saved to your systems when returned from Moneris Gateway in the response data, regardless if the value was received or not</p> <p>As a best practice, if the issuer ID is not returned and you received a value of NULL instead, store that value and send it in the subsequent transaction</p> |
| payment indicator<br><payment_indicator> | <i>String</i><br>1-character alphabetic      | <p>Indicates the current or intended use of the credentials</p> <p>Possible values for first transactions:</p> <p>C - unscheduled Credential on File (first transactions only)</p> <p>R - recurring</p> <p>V - recurring variable payment transaction</p> <p>Possible values for subsequent transactions:</p> <p>R - recurring</p> <p>V - recurring variable payment transaction</p> <p>U - unscheduled merchant-initiated transaction</p> <p>Z - unscheduled customer-initiated transaction</p> <p>In Credential on File transactions where the request field e-commerce</p>  |

| Variable Name                                | Type and Limits                          | Description  |
|--|--|--|
|  |  | <p>indicator is also being sent, the acceptable values for e-commerce indicator are dependent on the value sent for payment indicator, as follows:</p> <p>if payment indicator = R, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = V, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 2, 5 or 6</p> <p>if payment indicator = C, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = U, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1 or 7</p> <p>if payment indicator = Z, then allowable values for e-commerce indicator: 1, 5, 6 or 7</p> |
| payment information<br><payment_information> | <i>String</i><br><br>1-character numeric | Describes whether the transaction is the first or subsequent in the series<br><br>Possible values:<br><br>0 - first transaction in a series (storing payment details provided by the cardholder)<br><br>2 - subsequent transactions (using previously stored payment details)  |

## A.8 Definition of Request Fields – Installments by Visa

| Variable Name              | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|----------------------------|--|---|
| Installment Info           | <i>Object</i><br><br>N/A   | Contains request fields related to installments         |
| installment plan ID        | <i>String</i><br><br>36-character alphanumeric<br><br>fixed length | Card brand-generated identifier for an installment plan |
| installment plan reference | <i>String</i><br><br>10-character alphanumeric                     | Unique, human friendly name for the installment plan    |

| Variable Name                | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|------------------------------|--|--|
|                              | fixed length   |  |
| terms and conditions version | String<br>10-character alphanumeric<br>variable length (1-10 characters) | Version of the terms and conditions of the installment plan accepted by the cardholder<br><br>The version is auto-incremented every time an update is made to the plan by the issuer |

## A.9 Definition of Request Fields – Apple Pay Token

### Apple Pay Token transaction request fields – Required

| Variable Name                 | Type and Limits | Description   |
|-------------------------------|-----------------|---|
| display name<br><displayName> | String<br>N/A   | Field returned by Apple that displays the name of a user's card for ease of recognition   |
| signature<br><signature>      | String<br>N/A   | Signature of the payment and header data<br><br>The signature includes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the signing certificate,</li> <li>its intermediate CA certificate, and</li> <li>information about the signing algorithm</li> </ul> |
| data<br><data>                | String<br>N/A   | Encrypted payment data, presented as a Base64 Encoded string  |
| version<br><version>          | String<br>N/A   | Version information about the payment token<br><br>Only EC_v1 is supported  |

| Variable Name                                  | Type and Limits      | Description  |
|--|----------------------|--|
| header<br><header>                             | <i>Object</i><br>N/A | Additional version-dependent information used to decrypt and verify the payment.<br><br>There are three items in the setter: Public Key Hash, Ephemeral Public Key, Transaction ID |
| public key hash<br><public_key_hash>           | <i>String</i><br>N/A | SHA-256 Hash of the X.509 encoded public key bytes of the merchant's certificate   |
| ephemeral public key<br><ephemeral_public_key> | <i>String</i><br>N/A | Ephemeral public key bytes   |
| transaction ID<br><transaction_id>             | <i>String</i><br>N/A | Transaction identifier, generated on device  |

### Apple Pay Token transaction request fields – Optional

| Variable Name        | Type and Limits      | Description   |
|----------------------|----------------------|---|
| network<br><network> | <i>String</i><br>N/A | Description of the payment network to be used, contains the string representation of the PKPayment.paymentMethod.network. This field is required for ApplePay INTERAC transactions<br><br>This field is mandatory for Apple Pay and Google Pay™ INTERAC® e-Commerce transactions whereby the merchant is using their own API to decrypt the payload.<br><br>Field is case sensitive<br><br>Possible value:<br><br>Interac |
| type                 | <i>String</i>        | Description of the payment method type,   |

| Variable Name      | Type and Limits | Description  |
|--------------------|-----------------|--|
| <type>             | N/A             | <p>contains the string representation of the PKPayment.paymentMethod.type. This field is required for ApplePay INTERAC transactions</p> <p>This field is mandatory for INTERAC® e-CommerceApple Pay and Google Pay™ transactions whereby the merchant is using their own API to decrypt the payload</p> <p>Field is case sensitive</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <p>3DSecure = Cryptogram obtained using MerchantCapability3DS</p> <p>EMV = Cryptogram obtained using MerchantCapabliiyEMV</p> |
| token originator   | <i>Object</i>   | This is used for merchants who owns multiple merchant accounts and would like to decrypt using the encryption key of a master store  |
| <token_originator> | N/A             |  |

## A.10 Definition of Request Fields – Recurring Billing

### Recurring Billing Info Object Request Fields

| Variable Name    | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|------------------|------------------|---|
| number of recurs | <i>String</i>    | The number of times that the transaction must recur             |
| <num_rekurs>     | numeric<br>1-999 |   |
| period           | <i>String</i>    | Number of recur units that must pass between recurring billings |
| <period>         | numeric<br>1-999 |   |
| recurring amount | <i>String</i>    | Dollar amount of the recurring transaction                      |

| Variable Name              | Type and Limits   | Description  |
|----------------------------|---|--|
| <recur_amount>             | 10-character decimal, minimum three digits<br><br>Up to 7 digits (dollars) + decimal point (.) + 2 digits (cents) after the decimal point<br><br><div>EXAMPLE: 1234567.89</div> | This amount will be billed on the start date, and then billed repeatedly based on the interval defined by period and recur unit  |
| recur unit<br><recur_unit> | <i>String</i><br><br>day, week, month or eom  | Unit to be used as a basis for the interval<br><br>Works in conjunction with the period variable to define the billing frequency   |
| start date<br><start_date> | <i>String</i><br><br>YYYYMMDD format  | Date of the first future recurring billing transaction; this must be a date in the future<br><br>If an additional charge will be made immediately, the start now variable must be set to true  |
| start now<br><start_now>   | <i>String</i><br><br>true/false   | Set to true if a charge will be made against the card immediately; otherwise set to false<br><br>When set to false, use Card Verification prior to sending the Purchase with Recurring Billing and Credential on File objects<br><br><div>NOTE: Amount to be billed immediately can differ from the subsequent recurring amounts</div> |

## A.11 Definition of Request Fields – AVS Info Object

Request fields within the Address Verification Service (AVS) Information object

| Variable Name                            | Type and Limits                            | Description                             |
|--|--|---|
| AVS postal/ZIP code<br><avs_zipcode>     | <i>String</i><br>9-character alphanumeric  | Cardholder's address postal or ZIP code |
| AVS street name<br><avs_street_name>     | <i>String</i><br>19-character alphanumeric | Cardholder's address street name        |
| AVS street number<br><avs_street_number> | <i>String</i><br>19-character alphanumeric | Cardholder's address street number      |

## A.12 Definition of Request Fields – CVD Info Object

Request fields within the Card Validation Digits (CVD) Information object

### CVD Info object request fields – Required

| Variable Name                    | Type and Limits                      | Description  |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--|
| CVD indicator<br><cvd_indicator> | <i>String</i><br>1-character numeric | Indicates presence of CVD<br><br>Possible values:<br><br>0 – CVD value is deliberately bypassed or is not provided by the merchant<br><br>1 – CVD value is present<br><br>2 – CVD value is printed on the card, but is illegible<br><br>9 – Cardholder states that the card has no CVD |
| CVD value<br><cvd_value>         | <i>String</i><br>4-character numeric | CVD value printed on card<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> The CVD value must only be passed to the Moneris Gateway. Under <b>no</b> circumstances may it be stored for subsequent uses or displayed as part of the receipt information.  |

## Appendix B Definitions of Response Fields

Table 4: Receipt object response values

| Value                   | Type  | Limits  | Get Method |
|-------------------------|---|---|------------|
|                         | Description   |   |            |
| General response fields |   |   |            |
| Card type               | String  | 2-character alphabetic (min. 1)   |            |
|                         | Represents the type of card in the transaction, e.g., Visa, Mastercard.<br><br>Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• V = Visa</li><li>• M = Mastercard</li><li>• AX = American Express</li><li>• DC = Diner's Card</li><li>• NO = Novus/Discover</li><li>• SE = Sears</li><li>• D = Debit</li><li>• C1 = JCB</li></ul> |   |            |
| Card level result       | String  | 3-alphanumeric  |            |
|                         | (US only) Returns the product ID for the Visa or MC card program from the issuer. For a list of all Visa and MasterCard Card Level Result values refer to the Moneris developer portal at <a href="https://developer.moneris.com">https://developer.moneris.com</a> .   |   |            |
| Transaction amount      | String  | 10-character decimal<br><br>Up to 7 digits (dollars) + decimal point (.) + 2 digits (cents) after the decimal point<br><br><div>EXAMPLE: 1234567.89</div> |            |
|                         | Transaction amount that was processed.  |   |            |



**Table 4: Receipt object response values (continued)**

| Value              | Type  | Limits                     | Get Method |
|--------------------|---|----------------------------|------------|
|                    | Description   |                            |            |
| Transaction number | String  | 255-character alphanumeric |            |
|                    | Gateway Transaction identifier often needed for follow-on transactions (such as Refund and Purchase Correction) to reference the originally processed transaction.  |                            |            |
| Receipt ID         | String  | 50-character alphanumeric  |            |
|                    | Order ID that was specified in the transaction request.   |                            |            |
| Transaction type   | String  | 2-character alphanumeric   |            |
|                    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 = Purchase</li> <li>• 1 = Pre-Authorization</li> <li>• 2 = Completion</li> <li>• 4 = Refund</li> <li>• 11 = Void</li> </ul>  |                            |            |
| Reference number   | String  | 18-character numeric       |            |
|                    | <p>Terminal used to process the transaction as well as the shift, batch and sequence number. This data is typically used to reference transactions on the host systems, and must be displayed on any receipt presented to the customer. This information is to be stored by the merchant.</p> <p>Example: 660123450010690030</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 66012345: Terminal ID</li> <li>• 001: Shift number</li> <li>• 069: Batch number</li> <li>• 003: Transaction number within the batch.</li> </ul> |                            |            |

Table 4: Receipt object response values (continued)

| Value              | Type   | Limits                      | Get Method |
|--------------------|--|-----------------------------|------------|
|                    | Description  |                             |            |
| Response code      | String   | 3-character numeric         |            |
|                    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>&lt; 50: Transaction approved</li> <li>≥ 50: Transaction declined</li> <li>Null: Transaction incomplete.</li> </ul> <p>For further details on the response codes that are returned, see the Response Codes document at <a href="https://developer.moneris.com">https://developer.moneris.com</a>.</p> |                             |            |
| ISO                | String   | 2-character numeric         |            |
|                    | ISO response code  |                             |            |
| Bank totals        | Object   |                             |            |
|                    | Response data returned in a Batch Close and Open Totals request. See "Definitions of Response Fields" on page 320.   |                             |            |
| Message            | String   | 100-character alpha-numeric |            |
|                    | <p>Response description returned from issuer.</p> <p>The message returned from the issuer is intended for merchant information only, and is <b>not</b> intended for customer receipts.</p>   |                             |            |
| Authorization code | String   | 8-character alphanumeric    |            |
|                    | Authorization code returned from the issuing institution.  |                             |            |
| Complete           | String   | true/false                  |            |
|                    | Transaction was sent to authorization host and a response was received   |                             |            |
| Transaction date   | String   | Format: yyyy-mm-dd          |            |
|                    | Processing host date stamp   |                             |            |
| Transaction time   | String   | Format: ##:##:##            |            |
|                    | Processing host time stamp   |                             |            |
| Ticket             | String   | N/A                         |            |
|                    | Reserved field.  |                             |            |

**Table 4: Receipt object response values (continued)**

| Value                                   | Type  | Limits                     | Get Method |
|---|---|----------------------------|------------|
|   | Description   |                            |            |
| Timed out                               | String  | true/false                 |            |
|   | Transaction failed due to a process timing out.   |                            |            |
| Is Visa Debit                           | String  | true/false                 |            |
|   | Indicates whether the card processed is a Visa Debit.   |                            |            |
|   |   |                            |            |
| Batch Close/Open Totals response fields |   |                            |            |
| Processed card types                    | String Array  | N/A                        |            |
|   | Returns all of the processed card types in the current batch for the terminal ID/ECR Number from the request.   |                            |            |
| Terminal IDs                            | String  | 8-character alpha-numeric  |            |
|   | Returns the terminal ID/ECR Number from the request.  |                            |            |
| Purchase count                          | String  | 4-character numeric        |            |
|   | Indicates the # of Purchase, ACH debit, Pre-Authorization Completion and Force Post transactions processed. If none were processed in the batch, then the value returned will be 0000.  |                            |            |
| Purchase amount                         | String  | 11-character alpha-numeric |            |
|   | Indicates the dollar amount processed for Purchase, Pre-Authorization Completion or Force Post transactions. This field begins with a + and is followed by 10 numbers, the first 8 indicate the amount and the last 2 indicate the penny value. |                            |            |
|   | <div>EXAMPLE: +0000000000 = 0.00 and +0000041625 = 416.25</div>   |                            |            |
| Refund count                            | String  | 4-character numeric        |            |
|   | Indicates the # of Refund or Independent Refund transactions processed. If none were processed in the batch, then the value returned will be 0000.  |                            |            |

**Table 4: Receipt object response values (continued)**

| Value  | Type  | Limits                     | Get Method |
|--|---|----------------------------|------------|
|  | Description   |                            |            |
| Refund amount  | String  | 11-character alpha-numeric |            |
|  | Indicates the dollar amount processed for Refund, Independent Refund or ACH Credit transactions. This field begins with a + and is followed by 10 numbers, the first 8 indicate the amount and the last 2 indicate the penny value.<br><br>Example, +0000000000 = 0.00 and +0000041625 = 416.25 |                            |            |
| Correction count   | String  | 4-character numeric        |            |
|  | Indicates the # of Purchase Correction or ACH Reversal transactions processed. If none were processed in the batch, then the value returned will be 0000.   |                            |            |
| Correction amount  | String  | 11-character alpha-numeric |            |
|  | Indicates the dollar amount processed for Purchase Correction transactions. This field begins with a + and is followed by 10 numbers, the first 8 indicate the amount and the last 2 indicate the penny value.<br><br><div>EXAMPLE: +0000000000 = 0.00 and +0000041625 = 416.25</div>           |                            |            |
| Recurring Billing Response Fields (see Appendix A, page 1) |   |                            |            |
| Recurring billing success                                  | String  | true/false                 |            |
|  | Indicates whether the recurring billing transaction has been successfully set up for future billing.  |                            |            |
| Recur update success                                       | String  | true/false                 |            |
|  | Indicates recur update success.   |                            |            |
| Next recur date  | String  | yyyy-mm-dd                 |            |
|  | Indicates next recur billing date.  |                            |            |
| Recur end date   | String  | yyyy-mm-dd                 |            |
|  | Indicates final recur billing date.   |                            |            |
| Status Check response fields (see )                        |   |                            |            |

**Table 4: Receipt object response values (continued)**

| Value  | Type  | Limits                     | Get Method |
|--|---|----------------------------|------------|
|  | Description   |                            |            |
| Status code                                  | String  | 3-character alpha-numeric  |            |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• &lt; 50: Transaction found and successful</li><li>• ≥ 50: Transaction not found and not successful</li></ul> <div><b>NOTE:</b> the status code is only populated if the connection object's Status Check property is set to <b>true</b>.</div>                                      |                            |            |
| Status message                               | String  | found/not found            |            |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Found: <math>0 \leq \text{Status Code} \leq 49</math></li><li>• Not Found or null: <math>50 \leq \text{Status Code} \leq 999</math>.</li></ul> <div><b>NOTE:</b> The status message is only populated if the connection object's Status Check property is set to <b>true</b>.</div> |                            |            |
| AVS response fields (see Appendix A, page 1) |   |                            |            |
| AVS result code                              | String  | 1-character alpha-numeric  |            |
|  | Indicates the address verification result. For a full list of possible response codes refer to Section Appendix B.  |                            |            |
| CVD response fields (see )                   |   |                            |            |
| CVD result code                              | String  | 2-character alpha-numeric  |            |
|  | Indicates the CVD validation result. The first byte is the numeric CVD indicator sent in the request; the second byte is the response code. Possible response codes are shown in Appendix B   |                            |            |
| MPI response fields (see "MPI" on page 1)    |   |                            |            |
| Type   | String  | 99-character alpha-numeric |            |
|  | VERes, PAREs or error defines what type of response you are receiving .   |                            |            |

Table 4: Receipt object response values (continued)

| Value    | Type  | Limits                           | Get Method |
|----------|---|----------------------------------|------------|
|          | Description   |                                  |            |
| Success  | Boolean   | true/false                       |            |
|          | True if attempt was successful, false if attempt was unsuccessful.  |                                  |            |
| Message  | String  | 100-character alpha-<br>betic    |            |
|          | <p>MPI TXN transactions can produce the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Y: Create VBV verification form popup window.</li> <li>• N: Send purchase or preauth with crypt type 6</li> <li>• U: Send purchase or preauth with crypt type 7.</li> </ul> <p>MPI ACS transactions can produce the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Y or A: (Also <code>receipt.getMpiSuccess()=true</code>) Proceed with cavv purchase or cavv preauth.</li> <li>• N: Authentication failed or high-risk transaction. It is recommended that you do not to proceed with the transaction.<br/>Depending on a merchant's risk tolerance and results from other methods of fraud detection, transaction may proceed with crypt type 7.</li> <li>• U or time out: Send purchase or preauth as crypt type 7.</li> </ul> |                                  |            |
| Term URL | String  | 255-character alpha-<br>numeric  |            |
|          | URL to which the PAREs is returned  |                                  |            |
| MD       | String  | 1024-character alpha-<br>numeric |            |
|          | Merchant-defined data that was echoed back  |                                  |            |
| ACS URL  | String  | 255-character alpha-<br>numeric  |            |
|          | URL that will be for the generated pop-up   |                                  |            |
| MPI CAVV | String  | 28-character alpha-<br>numeric   |            |
|          | VbV/MCSC/American Express SafeKey authentication data   |                                  |            |

**Table 4: Receipt object response values (continued)**

| Value   | Type  | Limits                     | Get Method |
|---|---|----------------------------|------------|
|   | Description   |                            |            |
| MPI E-Commerce Indicator                        | String  | 1-character alpha-numeric  |            |
| CAVV result code                                | String  | 1-character alpha-numeric  |            |
|   | <p>Indicates the Visa CAVV result. For more information, see 1 CAVV Result Codes for Verified by Visa.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 = CAVV authentication results invalid</li> <li>• 1 = CAVV failed validation; authentication</li> <li>• 2 = CAVV passed validation; authentication</li> <li>• 3 = CAVV passed validation; attempt</li> <li>• 4 = CAVV failed validation; attempt</li> <li>• 7 = CAVV failed validation; attempt (US issued cards only)</li> <li>• 8 = CAVV passed validation; attempt (US issued cards only)</li> <li>• The CAVV result code indicates the result of the CAVV validation.</li> </ul> |                            |            |
| MPI inline form                                 |   |                            |            |
| <b>Vault response fields (see 4.1, page 71)</b> |   |                            |            |
| Data key  | String  | 28-character alpha-numeric |            |
|   | <p>The data key response field is populated when you send a Vault Add Credit Card - ResAddCC (page 1), Vault Encrypted Add Credit Card - EncResAddCC (page 1), Vault Tokenize Credit Card - ResTokenizeCC (page 1), Vault Add Temporary Token - ResTempAdd (page 1) or Vault Add Token - ResAddToken (page 1) transaction. It is the profile identifier that all future financial Vault transactions will use to associate with the saved information.</p>  |                            |            |

**Table 4: Receipt object response values (continued)**

| Value                        | Type   | Limits                     | Get Method |
|------------------------------|--|----------------------------|------------|
|                              | Description  |                            |            |
| Vault payment type           | String   | cc                         |            |
|                              | Indicates the payment type associated with a Vault profile                 |                            |            |
| Expiring card's Payment type | String   | cc                         |            |
|                              | Indicates the payment type associated with a Vault profile.                |                            |            |
| Vault masked PAN             | String   | 20-character numeric       |            |
|                              | Returns the first 4 and/or last 4 of the card number saved in the profile. |                            |            |
| Expiring card's Masked PAN   | String   | 20-character numeric       |            |
|                              | Returns the first 4 and/or last 4 of the card number saved in the profile. |                            |            |
| Vault success                | String   | true/false                 |            |
|                              | Indicates whether Vault transaction was successful.                        |                            |            |
| Vault customer ID            | String   | 30-character alpha-numeric |            |
|                              | Returns the customer ID saved in the profile.                              |                            |            |
| Expiring card's customer ID  | String   | 30-character alpha-numeric |            |
|                              | Returns the customer ID saved in the profile.                              |                            |            |
| Vault phone number           | String   | 30-character alpha-numeric |            |
|                              | Returns the phone number saved in the profile.                             |                            |            |
| Expiring card's phone number | String   | 30-character alpha-numeric |            |
|                              | Returns the phone number saved in the profile.                             |                            |            |



**Table 4: Receipt object response values (continued)**

| Value                                | Type   | Limits                     | Get Method |
|--------------------------------------|--|----------------------------|------------|
|                                      | Description  |                            |            |
| Vault email address                  | String   | 30-character alpha-numeric |            |
|                                      | Returns the email address saved in the profile.  |                            |            |
| Expiring card's email address        | String   | 30-character alpha-numeric |            |
|                                      | Returns the email address saved in the profile.  |                            |            |
| Vault note                           | String   | 30-character alpha-numeric |            |
|                                      | Returns the note saved in the profile.   |                            |            |
| Expiring card's note                 | String   | 30-character alpha-numeric |            |
|                                      | Returns the note saved in the profile.   |                            |            |
| Vault expiry date                    | String   | 4-character numeric        |            |
|                                      | Returns the expiry date of the card number saved in the profile. YYMM format.  |                            |            |
| Expiring card's expiry date          | String   | 4-character numeric        |            |
|                                      | Returns the expiry date of the card number saved in the profile. YYMM format.  |                            |            |
| Vault E-commerce indicator           | String   | 1-character numeric        |            |
|                                      | Returns the e-commerce indicator saved in the profile.   |                            |            |
| Expiring card's E-commerce indicator | String   | 1-character numeric        |            |
|                                      | Returns the e-commerce indicator saved in the profile.   |                            |            |
| Vault AVS street number              | String   | 19-character alpha-numeric |            |
|                                      | Returns the AVS street number saved in the profile. If no other AVS street number is passed in the transaction request, this value will be submitted along with the financial transaction to the issuer. |                            |            |

**Table 4: Receipt object response values (continued)**

| Value                             | Type   | Limits                     | Get Method |
|-----------------------------------|--|----------------------------|------------|
|                                   | Description  |                            |            |
| Expiring card's AVS street number | String   | 19-character alpha-numeric |            |
|                                   | Returns the AVS street number saved in the profile. If no other AVS street number is passed in the transaction request, this value will be submitted along with the financial transaction to the issuer.   |                            |            |
| Vault AVS street name             | String   | 19-character alpha-numeric |            |
|                                   | Returns the AVS street name saved in the profile. If no other AVS street number is passed in the transaction request, this value will be submitted along with the financial transaction to the issuer.     |                            |            |
| Expiring card's AVS street name   | String   | 19-character alpha-numeric |            |
|                                   | Returns the AVS street name saved in the profile. If no other AVS street number is passed in the transaction request, this value will be submitted along with the financial transaction to the issuer.     |                            |            |
| Vault AVS ZIP code                | String   | 9-character alpha-numeric  |            |
|                                   | Returns the AVS zip/postal code saved in the profile. If no other AVS street number is passed in the transaction request, this value will be submitted along with the financial transaction to the issuer. |                            |            |
| Expiring card's AVS ZIP code      | String   | 9-character alpha-numeric  |            |
|                                   | Returns the AVS zip/postal code saved in the profile. If no other AVS street number is passed in the transaction request, this value will be submitted along with the financial transaction to the issuer. |                            |            |
| Vault customer first name         | String   | 50-character alpha-numeric |            |
|                                   | (US ACH only) Returns the customer first name saved in the profile.  |                            |            |
| Vault customer last name          | String   | 50-character alpha-numeric |            |
|                                   | (US ACH only) Returns the customer last name saved in the profile.   |                            |            |

**Table 4: Receipt object response values (continued)**

| Value                       | Type   | Limits                     | Get Method |
|-----------------------------|--|----------------------------|------------|
|                             | Description  |                            |            |
| Vault customer address 1    | String   | 50-character alpha-numeric |            |
|                             | (US ACH only) Returns the customer address line 1 saved in the profile.  |                            |            |
| Vault customer address 2    | String   | 50-character alpha-numeric |            |
|                             | (US ACH only) Returns the customer address line 2 saved in the profile.  |                            |            |
| Vault customer city         | String   | 50-character alpha-numeric |            |
|                             | US ACH only Returns the customer city saved in the profile.  |                            |            |
| Vault customer state        | String   | 2-character alpha-numeric  |            |
|                             | US ACH only Returns the customer state code saved in the profile.  |                            |            |
| Vault customer ZIP code     | String   | 10-character numeric       |            |
|                             | US ACH only Returns the customer zip code saved in the profile.  |                            |            |
| Vault check routing number  | String   | 9-character numeric        |            |
|                             | US ACH only Returns the customer check routing number saved in the profile.  |                            |            |
| Vault masked account number | String   | 15-character alpha-numeric |            |
|                             | US ACH only Returns the masked first 4 and last 4 digits of the account number saved in the profile.                     |                            |            |
| Vault account number        | String   | 15-character alpha-numeric |            |
|                             | US ACH only Returns the full account number saved in the profile. Applicable to Vault Lookup Full transaction type only. |                            |            |
| Vault check number          | String   | 16-character numeric       |            |
|                             | US ACH only Returns the check number saved in the profile.   |                            |            |

Table 4: Receipt object response values (continued)

| Value   | Type  | Limits                     | Get Method |
|---|---|----------------------------|------------|
|   | Description   |                            |            |
| Vault account type  | String  | savings/checking           |            |
|   | US ACH only Returns the type of account saved in the profile.   |                            |            |
| Vault SEC code  | String  | 3-character alpha-numeric  |            |
|   | US ACH only Returns the ACH SEC code saved in the profile.  |                            |            |
| Vault credit card number                                    | String  | 20-character numeric       |            |
|   | Returns the full credit card number saved in the Vault profile. Applicable to Vault Lookup Full transaction only. |                            |            |
| Corporate card  | String  | true/false                 |            |
|   | Indicates whether the card associated with the Vault profile is a corporate card.                                 |                            |            |
| Encrypted Mag Swipe response fields (see Section 1, page 1) |   |                            |            |
| Masked credit card number                                   | String  | 20-character alpha-numeric |            |
|   |   |                            |            |
| Convenience Fee response fields (see Appendix A, page 1)    |   |                            |            |
| Convenience fee success                                     | String  | true/false                 |            |
|   | Indicates whether the Convenience Fee transaction processed successfully.   |                            |            |

**Table 4: Receipt object response values (continued)**

| Value                  | Type   |  | Limits                    | Get Method |
|------------------------|--|--|---------------------------|------------|
|                        | Description  |  |                           |            |
| Convenience fee status | String   |  | 3-character alpha-numeric |            |
|                        | <p>Indicates the status of the merchant and convenience fee transactions. The CfStatus field provides details about the transaction behavior and should be referenced when contacting Moneris Customer Support.</p> <p>Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1 or 1F – Completed 1st purchase transaction</li> <li>• 2 or 2F – Completed 2nd purchase transaction</li> <li>• 3 – Completed void transaction</li> <li>• 4A or 4D – Completed refund transaction</li> <li>• 7 or 7F – Completed merchant independent refund transaction</li> <li>• 8 or 8F – Completed merchant refund transaction</li> <li>• 9 or 9F – Completed 1st void transaction</li> <li>• 10 or 10F – Completed 2nd void transaction</li> <li>• 11A or 11D – Completed refund transaction</li> </ul> |  |                           |            |
| Convenience fee amount | String   |  | 9-character decimal       |            |
|                        | The expected Convenience Fee amount. This field will return the amount submitted by the merchant for a successful transaction. For an unsuccessful transaction, it will return the expected convenience fee amount   |  |                           |            |
| Convenience fee rate   | String   |  | 9-character decimal       |            |
|                        | <p>The convenience fee rate that has been defined on the merchant's profile. For example:</p> <p>1.00 – a fixed amount or</p> <p>10.0 - a percentage amount</p>  |  |                           |            |

**Table 4: Receipt object response values (continued)**

| Value                               | Type   | Limits                    | Get Method |
|-------------------------------------|--|---------------------------|------------|
|                                     | Description  |                           |            |
| Convenience fee type                | String   | AMT/PCT                   |            |
|                                     | The type of convenience fee that has been defined on the merchant's profile.   |                           |            |
|                                     | Available options are:   |                           |            |
|                                     | AMT – fixed amount   |                           |            |
|                                     | PCT – percentage   |                           |            |
| Merchant Advice Code response field |  |                           |            |
| Advice Code                         | String   | 2-character alpha-numeric |            |
|                                     | The message returned from the issuer is intended for merchant information only, and is not intended for customer receipts.   |                           |            |
|                                     | For further details on the response codes that are returned, see the Advice Code document at <a href="https://developer.moneris.com">https://developer.moneris.com</a> . |                           |            |

**Table 5: Financial transaction response codes**

| Code | Description                                |
|------|--|
| < 50 | Transaction approved                       |
| ≥ 50 | Transaction declined                       |
| NULL | Transaction was not sent for authorization |

For more details on the response codes that are returned, see the Response Codes document available at <https://developer.moneris.com>

**Table 6: Vault Admin Responses**

| Code | Description   |
|------|---|
| 001  | <p>Successfully registered CC details.</p> <p>Successfully updated CC details.</p> <p>Successfully deleted CC details.</p> <p>Successfully located CC details.</p> <p>Successfully located # expiring cards.</p> <p>(NOTE: # = the number of cards located)</p> |

| Code | Description                |
|------|----------------------------|
| 983  | Cannot find previous       |
| 986  | Incomplete: timed out      |
| 987  | Invalid transaction        |
| 988  | Cannot find expiring cards |
| Null | Error: Malformed XML       |

## B.1 Definition of Response Fields –Installments by Visa

### Response fields appearing in the Installment Plan Lookup transaction

| Variable Name                | Type and Limits            | Description   |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|---|
| Eligible Installment Plans   | <i>Object</i><br>N/A       | Contains fields related to the installment plan   |
| plan count                   | <i>String</i><br>numeric   | Total number of installment plans available for offer to the cardholder   |
| Plan Details                 | <i>Array object</i><br>N/A | Contains fields related to the particular installment plan<br><br>Each installment plan on offer to the cardholder is represented by a distinct Plan Details object   |
| annual percentage rate (APR) | <i>String</i><br>numeric   | Annual percentage rate (APR) attached to the installment plan payments; for display purposes only and not used for calculations<br><br>Allowable values: 0-10000<br><br>Percentage rate is represented with |

| Variable Name              | Type and Limits  | Description   |
|----------------------------|--|---|
|                            |  | two implicit decimals<br><b>EXAMPLE:</b> 320 is 3.2%  |
| installment frequency      | <i>String</i><br>max 10-character alpha-<br>betic          | Frequency of installments for the plan<br><br>Potential values:<br>WEEKLY<br>BIWEEKLY<br>MONTHLY<br>BIMONTHLY         |
| installment plan ID        | <i>String</i><br>36-character alphanumeric<br>fixed length | Card brand-generated identifier for an installment plan<br><br>Used as a request field in the Installment Info object |
| installment plan name      | <i>String</i><br>max 255-character alpha-<br>numeric       | Name of the installment plan; may not be unique   |
| installment plan reference | <i>String</i><br>10-character alphanumeric<br>fixed length | Unique, human friendly name for the installment plan<br><br>Used as a request field in the Installment Info object    |
| installment plan type      | <i>String</i><br>max 20 character alpha-<br>numeric        | Type of installment plans<br><br>Potential values:<br>ISSUER_PROMOTION<br>BI_LATERAL<br>ISSUER_DEFAULT<br>MARKET      |
| number of installments     | <i>String</i><br>4-character numeric                       | Maximum number of installments in the plan  |



| Variable Name            | Type and Limits                   | Description  |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|
|                          | min 1, max 1000                   |  |
| First Installment        | Object<br>N/A                     | Contains cost details for the first installment  |
| first installment amount | String<br>max 9-character numeric | Amount of the first installment payment<br><br>Final two digits represent penny values<br><br><b>EXAMPLE:</b> 123112 = \$1231.12 |
| first installment fee    | String<br>max 9-character numeric | Fee charged on the first installment<br><br>Final two digits represent penny values<br><br><b>EXAMPLE:</b> 123112 = \$1231.12    |
| upfront fee              | String<br>numeric                 | The up-front fee charged to the cardholder for the installment plan; only charged on the first installment                       |
| Last Installment         | Object<br>N/A                     | Contains cost details for the last installment   |
| last installment amount  | String<br>max 9-character numeric | Amount of the final installment payment<br><br>Final two digits represent penny values<br><br><b>EXAMPLE:</b> 123112 = \$1231.12 |
| last installment fee     | String<br>max 9-character numeric | Fee charged on the last installment<br><br>Final two digits represent penny values   |

| Variable Name                | Type and Limits                                  | Description   |
|------------------------------|--|---|
|                              |  | <div>EXAMPLE: 123112 = \$1231.12</div>  |
| Promotion Info               | <i>Object</i><br>N/A                             | Contains promotion information shared between the issuer and the merchant   |
| promotion code               | <i>String</i><br>2-character alphanumeric        | An external identifier for the plan provided by the issuer  |
| promotion ID                 | <i>String</i><br>max 8-character alphanumeric    | An external identifier provided by the issuer that identifies a program or promotion  |
| Terms and Conditions         | <i>Array object</i><br>N/A                       | Contains fields related to terms and conditions presented to the cardholder   |
| terms and conditions count   | <i>String</i><br>numeric                         | Number of instances of the set of terms and conditions attached to a particular installment plan, representing the number of languages they are offered in      |
| Terms and Conditions Details | <i>Object</i><br>N/A                             | Contains details related to a particular language set (English, French, etc.) of terms and conditions being offered<br><br>Each language set has its own object |
| language code                | <i>String</i><br>3-character alphanumeric        | Language code for the terms and conditions text   |
| text                         | <i>String</i><br>max 2000-character alphanumeric | Text of the terms and conditions for the installment plan   |
| terms and conditions URL     | <i>String</i><br>max 1000 character-alphanumeric | A terms and conditions HTTPS URL hosted by the issuer for displaying to the cardholder  |

| Variable Name                | Type and Limits  | Description  |
|------------------------------|--|--|
| terms and conditions version | String<br>10-character alphanumeric<br>variable length (1-10 characters) | Version of the terms and conditions of the installment plan accepted by the cardholder<br><br>The version is auto-incremented every time an update is made to the plan by the issuer   |
| total fees                   | String<br>max 9-character numeric  | Total fees charged by the plan<br><br>Final two digits represent penny values<br><br><b>EXAMPLE:</b> 123112 = \$1231.12  |
| total plan cost              | String<br>numeric  | Represents the total amount the selected installment plan will cost<br><br>The right-most digits represent minor units (e.g., cents in CAD); no fractional minor units<br><br><b>EXAMPLE:</b> 123112 in CAD represents CAD \$1231.12 |

### Response fields appearing in financial transactions

| Variable Name              | Type and Limits                                     | Description   |
|----------------------------|---|---|
| Installment Results        | Object<br>N/A                                       | Contains fields related to the installment plan in financial transactions |
| installment plan ID        | String<br>36-character alphanumeric<br>fixed length | Card brand-generated identifier for an installment plan                   |
| installment plan reference | String<br>10-character alphanumeric                 | Unique, human friendly name for the installment plan                      |

| Variable Name                | Type and Limits   | Description   |
|------------------------------|---|---|
|                              | fixed length  |   |
| terms and conditions version | <i>String</i><br>10-character alphanumeric<br>variable length (1-10 characters) | Version of the terms and conditions of the installment plan accepted by the cardholder.<br><br>The version is auto-incremented every time an update is made to the plan by the issuer.  |
| plan acceptance ID           | <i>String</i><br>36-character alphanumeric<br>fixed length                      | Visa-generated, alphanumeric, unique and short human-readable name for the installment plan   |
| installment plan status      | <i>String</i><br>1-character alphabetic<br>fixed length                         | Potential values:<br><br>N – new plan, not accepted yet<br><br>A – accepted plan<br><br>C – cancelled plan  |
| plan response                | <i>String</i><br>max 50-character numeric                                       | Response code for the installment plan<br><br>Potential values:<br><br>00 – processed and approved<br><br>If not 00, indicates installment plan processing failure; a verbose error response message as received from from Visa is returned |

